
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<http://books.google.com>



UC-NRLF



\$B 602 346

Digitized by Google

A

SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES,

FROM THE

EARLIEST PERIOD ~~TO THE~~ PRESENT TIME.

BY JOHN GILMARY SHEA.

REVISED EDITION.



NEW YORK:
EDWARD DUNIGAN AND BROTHER,
(JAMES B. KIRKER.)
699 BROADWAY.

E178
1
95

57143

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1855, by
JAMES B. KIRKER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the
Southern District of New York.

P R E F A C E.

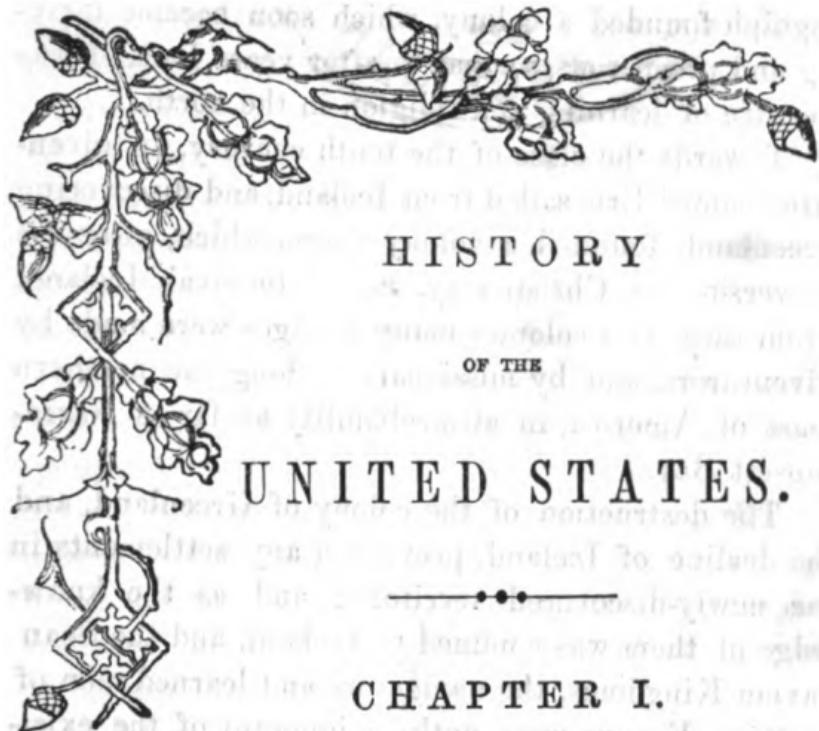
THE present more extended School History of the United States will, it is hoped, supply a long felt want, especially in Catholic establishments. Leaving the track of the usual compendiums, in which an undue influence is given to one section and one element in our country and nation, the author, who has devoted some years to the study of our national history, has endeavored to give equal interest to all. Incidents bearing more especially on the Catholic Church, as possessing greater interest for those for whom the work is intended, are frequently introduced, though not where they possess no general interest.

As a teacher he has always found the accounts of our early history very confused, and he now attempts to simplify it, by giving the separate colonial history only down to the period when the English government began to

take an active interest in the colonies: after that the history is pursued by reigns till the time of the Continental Congress.

He now offers it to the various schools and institutions, trusting that they will find it both correct and teachable.

New York, July 22, 1865.



HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES.
CHAPTER I.

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

1. AMERICA was, like the other quarters of the globe, settled by the descendants of Noah; but owing to its distance from the other continents, all knowledge of it was soon lost in Europe and Asia, and none of the civilized nations of antiquity give us any mention of it.

2. The Irish, who were great navigators and sea-rovers, discovered Iceland soon after their conversion to Christianity, and founded settlements, which were, however, soon destroyed. In the ninth century several Norwegians visited the same island, and one named

1. What knowledge had the ancients of America?

Ingulph founded a colony, which soon became thriving and prosperous, so that in after years Iceland was a centre of learning and religion in the north.

Towards the close of the tenth century, an adventurer named Eric sailed from Iceland, and discovering Greenland, founded a colony there, which, after his conversion to Christianity, began to rival Iceland. From these two colonies many voyages were made by adventurers, and by missionaries, along the northern coast of America, in all probability as far as Narragansett Bay.

The destruction of the colony of Greenland, and the decline of Iceland, prevented any settlements in the newly-discovered territory; and as the knowledge of them was confined to Iceland, and the Scandinavian Kingdoms, the navigators and learned men of southern Europe were entirely ignorant of the existence of a great continent beyond the Atlantic.

3. The discoveries of the Northmen had been long forgotten in their own land, and were never even dreamed of in the commercial countries on the Mediterranean, when the adventurous spirit of the time raised up one destined to reveal the long-hidden continent. This was Christopher Columbus, a Genoese, who, after commanding many years in the Mediterranean, removed to Portugal, and acquired both renown and experience, by voyages on the ocean.

His studies had convinced him of the spherical form of the earth, and consequently of the possi-

2. By whom was Iceland discovered? by whom colonized? What other parts were settled and explored by the Northmen?

3. What was the result of Columbus' studies? What continent did he

bility of reaching Asia by sailing westward, while at the same time, the proofs of a continent beyond the Atlantic thrown up at times in the shape of trees and carved bits of wood, convinced him that the distance was not insuperable.

Supposing this continent to be Asia, he at once resolved to seek a western passage to China, and proposed a voyage of discovery to his native state, to Venice, France, England and Portugal, but every where without success. Thus disappointed, Columbus repaired in 1484 to Castile, and after urging the matter for eight years, succeeded in enlisting Queen Isabella in his plans. Her husband Ferdinand approved it, and they jointly appointed Columbus, hereditary Admiral and Viceroy of all the lands that he should discover.

4. At the expense of the Queen, three small vessels were soon fitted out, and Columbus hoisting his flag on the St. Mary, sailed from Palos on the 3d of August, 1492, leaving behind him scarce one who believed his plan to be any thing but a dream.

On the 9th of September he left Ferro, and steering out into the broad Atlantic, began in earnest his voyage over a sea where there was no chart to guide him. Amid the anxiety natural in such circumstances, a new motive of fear arose. Their only guide in that wilderness of waters, the hitherto faithful compass, began to vary. Concealing his own anxiety, Columbus succeeded in dispelling the fears

suppose it to be? Who at last enabled him to sail on a voyage of exploration?

4. When did Columbus sail, and from what port? What happened to

of the crew: birds and sea-weed seen from time to time, enabled him to keep their hopes alive; but when after some weeks all such signs disappeared, a mutinous spirit began to display itself. Murmurs and threats against him were now frequent, but the commanding air, the confident demeanor of Columbus, bore down all opposition, and the vessels kept on their way.

At this critical moment, green rushes, fruit, and other indications of land dispelled all fears. Land was near, and orders were given for a regular watch to catch the first glimpse of land, and the promise of a royal bounty, stimulated all to be on the alert. Just before midnight, Columbus, while standing on the bow of the St. Mary, saw a light pass rapidly in the darkness, and was thus himself the first to discover the land.

5. The morn revealed the new-found world. It was the 12th of October, 1492. Columbus, in a rich and splendid dress, followed by his crew, landed. Falling on their knees they kissed the earth, and planting a cross, unfurled the gorgeous standard of Spain before the wondering natives. Thus met for the first time the Spaniard and the Indian: each gazed in wonder on the other, and on the scene around him. The naked islander, with his copper complexion, rude arms, and rustic hovels, the rich verdure, the strange birds and plants, all filled the one with amazement, while the other gazed in wonder and awe on the vast

the compass? What kept up the hope of the crew? When did Columbus discover land?

5. On what day did Columbus land? Describe the natives? What

bulk of the ships, the curious dress, and the stately ceremony of the strangers.

The spot where Columbus landed, was the island called by the natives Guanahani, but which he named San Salvador, in honor of our Saviour. And now full of hope, Columbus pursued his voyage of discovery; after touching at many small islands, he discovered Cuba and Hayti, and having lost one vessel, left a colony on the latter island; then on the 4th of January, sailed for Spain. Terrible storms almost hid for ever the discovery, for Columbus had well-nigh perished; but after a voyage of two months he arrived at Lisbon.

6. He believed that he had reached the East Indies, and such was the news which now ran through Spain. His progress to Barcelona, where the court sat, was a triumph: there Ferdinand and Isabella rose from their thrones, to lead the Admiral to a seat prepared for him. This was his hour of triumph. His subsequent voyages and misfortunes do not enter into the plan of our history. He died, deprived of his honors and authority by a jealous court, and even by the world, for before he closed his eyes, the continent which he had discovered received the name of America, or Land of Henry, from Americus or Henry Vespucci, a literary man in the expedition of Ojeda, in 1499.

Spain, by virtue of the discovery, claimed the

was the land thus discovered? What other islands did he discover? Where did he leave some men to begin a colony?

6. What was his reception on his return? What was his subsequent history? What claim did Spain found on his discovery? What other

whole newly-discovered continent; but Portugal, France, and England, disregarded her pretensions, and sent out vessels to discover and explore. All these countries, as well as Holland and Sweden, founded colonies on different parts, most of which are now independent States. Of these, our own republic is by far the greatest and most extensive. The United States extend from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and from the 25th to the 49th degrees of latitude at the widest point. This vast territory was not discovered at one time, nor colonized by one nation. Its basis is the union of several English colonies, to which many accessions have been since made. Leaving then aside the history of other parts, we begin the history of what now forms the United States.

countries founded colonies? What have these become? Which is the greatest?





CHAPTER II.

VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY ON OUR COAST—ATTEMPTS AT CONQUEST—MISSIONARY EFFORTS.

1. WHEN the success of Columbus had shown the various European courts their folly in rejecting his plans, they sought to share in its benefits. England was the first to follow Spain. On the fifth of March, 1496, Henry VII., by a royal patent empowered John Cabot, a Venetian merchant at Bristol, and his three sons, to sail in search of new lands. Cabot and his son Sebastian sailed the next year, and reached the American continent in latitude 56° North, and after coasting to Labrador returned, having been the first to reach the American continent. In the following year Sebastian sailed again by the way of Iceland, and reached the mainland about the 59th degree, and then coasted down to the neighborhood of Albemarle Sound, thus surveying a large portion of our coast, which England claimed by virtue of his discovery.

The king of Portugal next sent in the same direction an expedition commanded by Gaspar Corteereal,

1. What navigator was sent out by Henry VII. of England? What did he explore? Who was sent out by Portugal, and what did he explore?

who, in 1500, coasted six or seven hundred miles northward; till about the 50th degree, when he returned with a cargo of slaves. The Spaniard Gomez next followed, and explored most of our southern coast.

2. The French were less prompt in the field, but it seems that as early as 1504, the Breton fishermen, who were soon after deriving wealth from their sure but laborious visits to the Banks of Newfoundland, visited and explored our northern shores. No regular expedition, however, was sent out till 1524, when Francis I. dispatched from Dieppe, John Verrazzani, a Florentine, in a single vessel, to explore the new-found-land. He reached the coast of Carolina in safety, and proceeding north, examined the shores and harbors as far as Nova Scotia, and returned to France, in July, 1524. This voyage was not immediately followed up; but in 1534, the same king sent out James Cartier to make further discoveries. With the blessings of the Church, he sailed from St. Malo in April, and reaching St. Catharine's in Newfoundland, sailed around that island; gave name to Chaleurs and Gaspé, and ascended the St. Lawrence, till he saw the shore on each side. In less than five months after his departure, he was again in the church of St. Malo.

In the following year, he once more entered the St. Lawrence, to which he gave its present name. He wintered at Quebec; but ascended in boats to Montreal, where he found a large Indian town, called

2. Who were the first French explorers? What did Verrazzani discover? What parts were visited by Cartier? What claims were set up

Hochelaga, and from its Iroquois inhabitants, gleaned tidings of the country south of the mountains which he saw in the distance. Planting the arms of France on Isle Orleans, he returned home in the spring.

These voyages gave four different nations claims to our coast, while at the same time the Spaniards were exploring the part lying on the Gulf of Mexico, as we shall see. England, France, Spain, Holland and Sweden established colonies in various parts of what is now our Republic; most of which eventually centered in the hands of England, to form the United States. These colonies were not, however, founded, until after many fruitless attempts at colonization and conquest, in which the blood of Europeans and natives was lavishly poured out.

3. The first who undertook the conquest of any portion of our present territory, was Spain, which had already not only explored, but even subjugated much of the New World. The leader of this expedition was John Ponce de Leon, a companion of Columbus, a brave but arbitrary chief. Already he had conquered Porto Rico, but being forced to surrender it to the family of Columbus, sallied forth in search of a new realm.

Ponce with three armed vessels, sailed from Porto Rico in March, 1512, and after cruising through the Bahamas, came in sight of land, but merely coasted along till the 2d of April, when he anchored in $30^{\circ} 8'$ north, and landing, took possession in the

by various governments? What nations attempted to conquer or colonize the country?

8. Who first undertook to conquer? Describe Ponce's expedition. What

name of his sovereign with the usual ceremonies, and called the country Florida, from the Spanish name of Palm Sunday, the day of debarkation.

By some it is said that he sought a fountain of perpetual youth; for Florida is so healthy, that it was reputed to contain such a treasure, and even now in Cuba they say: "A Floridian never dies."

Nine years later, the conquests of Cortez in Mexico, again aroused the ambition of Ponce, and collecting a considerable force, he resolved to subdue Florida. After a long, and dangerous passage, he landed in 1521, on the coast, but was instantly attacked by the natives with such fury, that he was with great difficulty saved by his men. After severe loss, they succeeded in reaching their ships, bearing off their veteran commander mortally wounded. The vessels returned to Cuba, which Ponce only reached to breathe his last.

The next attempt was made by Vasquez de Ayllon, whom a successful slaving trip to the River Combahee and the country of Chicora, had filled with hopes. He sailed in 1525, with a royal commission to complete the conquest, but the loss of one of his vessels was followed by the massacre of the first party of two hundred Spaniards, whom he landed. Justly punished by Heaven, he returned in shame and poverty to St. Domingo.

4. A third attempt was now made on a still

name did he give to the country? When did he renew the attempt? With what result? When was the next attempt made, and by whom? What did he effect?

4. What grant did Narvaez obtain? When and where did he land?

grander scale. Pamphilus de Narvaez having obtained of the Emperor Charles V. a grant of all the country from the River Palmas to the extremity of Florida, sailed from Cuba in four ships, with a force of horse and foot, exceeding three hundred men. On the 12th of April, 1526, he anchored in a bay in West Florida, and landing, took possession, as so many had already done. He than began his march inland against the supposed wealthy kingdom of Apalache. His expedition is noted for its disasters. The town was taken, but proving a mere collection of hovels, Narvaez had to retreat. Surrounded by hostile savages, he saw his ranks daily thin around him, but at last, in September, reached the Gulf of Mexico with a few survivors. Their ships had gone, and in attempting to reach Mexico in such wretched boats as they could make, all perished but three, who after a most eventful wandering, traversed nearly the whole continent, and reached their countrymen in Sonora, on the Gulf of California. The fate of Narvaez himself, is unknown.

Nowise discouraged by such disasters, the Spanish adventurers planned new expeditions; for gold found in small quantities on the coast, led to the belief that there were extensive mines in the interior. Gold was the only object of these adventurous men, who little thought that calm and patient industry was to make those almost unproductive lands more valuable and important than Mexico and Peru with all their mineral wealth.

What country did he subdue? What became of his expedition? What still encouraged adventurers?

5. Ferdinand de Soto, Governor of Cuba, was now seized with the desire of conquest. His success in Pizarro's wars, in which he had played a conspicuous part, drew to his standard adventurers from every part of Spain and Portugal. Crossing the Atlantic in a large fleet, he soon completed his preparations, and in May, 1539, sailed from Havana, with an army of 900 foot and 300 cavaliers, all fully equipped and supplied with every requisite for a long and tedious expedition. Twelve priests accompanied him to convert and instruct the conquered nations, for none doubted of their success.

De Soto landed at Espiritu Santo Bay, in spite of the opposition of the natives: then sending back all but four of his ships, he left a guard to secure these, and took up his line of march towards the north-east. The natives were almost uniformly hostile, and his march was a series of bloody skirmishes, crowned by the massacre of several thousand natives at Vittacucho, a town near the head waters of the Chattahoochee, whose king had at first surrendered to De Soto, but subsequently attempted to cut him off. The tribe was almost annihilated.

De Soto wintered in Apalache, and marching westward in the spring, found the gold of the rich provinces to be merely copper. Pearls, however, served for a time to keep alive his hopes, and some bushels were gathered from the natives. Despairing

5. Who next resolved to conquer Florida? When did he sail from Havana, and with what force? Where did he land? At what place was he opposed by the natives? What was the result? Where was he again attacked and by whom?

of success in that direction, he returned to the gulf, where his ships had discovered the beautiful bay of Pensacola. On his march he entered the territory of the gigantic chieftain, Tuscaloosa, who received him kindly, and invited him to his chief town, Mavila or Mobile. As De Soto entered, he was suddenly attacked, but soon by his superior skill, routed the natives with terrible slaughter. This battle was one of the bloodiest ever fought between the whites and Indians: and though the loss of the Spaniards was comparatively small, they saw all their baggage perish in the town, which had been fired during the engagement. *

6. De Soto at last reached the gulf, with his army wasted by battle, and destitute of every necessary, but he would not abandon his enterprise or confess his failure. He again struck towards the north, and wintered in the Chickasaw country: but in March, 1541, was attacked at night by the natives, who fired the village and cut off eleven of the Spaniards, while the remainder beheld their live stock and last scanty baggage again destroyed by the flames.

Still undismayed, De Soto advanced by constant battles to the banks of the Mississippi, to which he gave the name of the Rio Grande, and crossing it at the lowest Chickasaw bluff, ascended it for some time. Weary of this, he turned westward with his naked troops in search of gold. Winter found him in the Washita country, and there he remained till spring.

6. Where did he next proceed? Who attacked his camp in March, 1541? Where did he then proceed? What plan brought him back to the Mississippi river? What became of him? Who led off his expedition to Mexico?

During the winter he resumed his original plan of founding a town, and resolved to build one with the remnant of his force at the mouth of the Mississippi; but sinking under the weight of misfortune, he died in May, 1542, soon after reaching its banks. His body wrapped in his cloak, was sunk in the great river which he had discovered.

Muscoso de Alvarado assumed the command, and recrossing the river made a fruitless attempt to reach Mexico by land, but in November, 1542, was again on the Mississippi. Here, in the spring, by the help of some friendly chiefs, he built and fitted out some boats, by which he and the scanty remnant of De Soto's gallant array, descended the river, and coasted along the shore of the gulf to Panuco, where they arrived in the fall of 1543.

7. This expedition had lasted four years, and was as fruitless as all that had preceded it; while a cruelty to the natives which characterized it, almost closes our heart to all pity for its misfortunes. It was the last effort made to conquer any portion of the country by force of arms. It was now seen that the only inhabitants, were poor, half-naked savages, whom it was as difficult, as it was useless to subdue.

The voyages of exploration and military expeditions, all showed that America in this part was inhabited by various tribes of savages, differing, it is true, in language, but closely resembling each other in color, customs, and mode of life. They were

7. What was the condition of all the natives seen in these expeditions? In what did they differ from each other? Describe their dress, houses, and agriculture.

all of a copper color, generally tall and well-formed, with straight black hair. They subsisted by the chase, cultivating only maize, tobacco, and a few vegetables. They were ignorant of the use of iron, having only stone weapons and implements. Their houses were made of bark or logs, or were mere tents of mats or hides; and their dress consisted of skins. These tribes were constantly at war, and were very cruel to each other.

8. Another series of expeditions was occurring at this period, and to them the mind can turn with a pleasure so much the greater, as charity exceeds ambition, or virtue vice. Spain sent forth not only adventurers, whose hands were to be red with Indian blood, but also men guided solely by the counsels of the Gospel, who at the expense of their toil and blood, sought to gain the natives to the Christian faith.

The expedition of Narvaez led to the first of these. Among the first who reached Sonora, was a negro named Stephen, who entered the service of the Franciscans. His description of the countries which he had traversed excited the zeal of those religious, and in 1539, Father Mark, of Nice, set out from St. Michael's, in Culiacan, with another friar and some Indians, all guided by Stephen. After a march of many hundred miles, over deserts and mountains, they approached Zuñi, then called Cibola, and sent their guide with presents to the king, whose territo-

8. What other kind of expeditions were taking place? What led to these? What town was visited by Father Mark of Nice, and how? What is this country now called? Describe the natives.

ries it was chiefly their design to visit. The king attacked the envoys, and killed several. Father Mark ventured within sight of the town, and returned. His information was not much more than conjectural, but his account led to new explorations.

The country thus visited by the Franciscan Mark of Nice, and now called New Mexico, was a country quite different from the more northern parts. It lay in the valley of the Rio Grande, and was inhabited by a settled race, who cultivated the ground, raising not only maize, pumpkins and other vegetables, but even cotton, which they wove into a coarse cloth. They also manufactured a rude pottery, and lived in houses built of stone, or of sun-dried bricks. In these houses too, the hand-mill, for grinding their corn, showed a degree of civilization much above the Indians of the north and east.

9. On Father Mark's report, Mendoza, the Viceroy of Mexico, sent out an expedition under Vasquez de Coronado, to explore the new region. Coronado set out in April, 1540, accompanied by five Franciscans, all eager to labor in the conversion of the natives. Cibola was soon taken, but proving to be merely a poor town of sun-burnt bricks, Coronado advanced towards the Rio Grande, in search of the kingdom of Quivira. The strong town of Tiguex refused him entrance or a passage, but after a stubborn fight, was taken and sacked. Passing on he came at last to Quivira, which proved to be a place of no wealth: and merely the last town of the half-civilized

9. What expedition set out on his return? What parts were discovered by it? What two missionaries remained? What was their fate?

Indians, beyond whom lay the bison plains, the home of the wild tribes.

Disgusted at the poverty of the country, Corzado prepared to return; but the missionaries who had been charmed by the gentle character of the people, asked to remain; and two, Father John de Padilla and Brother John of the Cross, were permitted to remain, and found missions at Quivira and Pecos, the commander assigning to them a portion of his live stock, and one Portuguese, with several converted Indians volunteering to join them. Coronado returned to Mexico; the missionaries began their labors, but were soon after killed by roving Indians in the midst of the duties which they had so heroically undertaken.

Simultaneously with Coronado's expedition a fleet was sent to explore the coast of California, and much of the Pacific shore of the Republic visited by the Spaniards.

But though the territory now occupied by California, Utah and New Mexico was thus explored, no settlement was attempted, nor did any new expedition enter it for many years. At last, in 1580, the zealous Franciscan, Rodriguez, with two companions Lopez and Santa Maria, set out to convert New Mexico. They reached it alone, and soon made so many converts, that one of them, Father John de Santa Maria, returned to Mexico for assistance and supplies. On his way he was murdered, and his companions were soon after slain in the course of an Indian war.

When did missionaries again enter the country, and what did they effect?

10. Previous to this, a still more thrilling and noble-hearted effort was made in Florida, by the Dominican Father, Louis Cancer, the friend of the great Las Casas. Mourning over the cruelty of his countrymen, he conceived the project of conquering Florida in the guise of peace, of showing to the natives by his example, that the conduct of those whom they had hitherto seen, was reprobated by the religion of the white man.

His proposal found credit with Philip II. of Spain, who placed a ship at his disposal. On his return to Mexico, he was joined by three other Dominicans, and proceeded to the coast of Florida by the way of Havana, after publishing a royal decree which he had obtained, setting free all natives of Florida held in slavery. The missionaries went unarmed, in an unarmed vessel, peaceful in guise and heart as became messengers of peace.

Their destination was Appalachee Bay, but missing it they reached Tampa Bay, where one missionary, Father Tolosa, landed, intending to proceed by land. At Appalachee, Father Cancer resolved to begin his mission, although his companion, Tolosa, did not appear, and it was reported that he had been murdered. The danger was great, but his zeal was greater,—and when he landed on the 27th of June, 1549, he was instantly surrounded, scalped, and murdered. His death, so glorious to religion, defeated the Christian plan of a peaceful enterprise, and the vessel returned to Mexico.

11. What did the Dominican Father Cancer attempt? What king sided his plan? When did he land? What became of him?



CHAPTER III.

INEFFECTUAL ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

1. Besides the Spanish attempts to conquer or convert, one effort at colonization was made in 1559, in Western Florida and Alabama. In consequence of the massacre of the crews of several Spanish vessels which had been shipwrecked on the shores of the Gulf of Mexico, the government in that year sent Don Tristan de Luna, with 13 vessels and 1,500 men, attended by a large body of Dominicans, to found a colony and convert the natives.

Tristan was wrecked himself, but collecting the survivors of his expedition, founded Santa Cruz in Pensacola Bay, and hearing flattering accounts of Coosa, proceeded to the Creek country with part of his force. Forming an alliance with the chief, he advanced with him against the Natchez Indians, and then returned to Santa Cruz. Here his men revolted, and as some had already returned to accuse De Luna, a new Governor, Villafañe, soon arrived. Disappointed at the state of affairs, that officer broke up

1. What was the first Spanish colonial effort? What town did De Luna found? What was the result of the colony?

the colony and retired. De Luna tried for a time to restore it, but was compelled by the viceroy to return to Mexico.

2. While the soldiers and the priests of Spain were thus seeking to explore and occupy the country, the merchants of France entered the field, impelled by the success of the hardy fishermen of Brittany and Normandy. They formed a plan of colonization, but it soon fell through.

A nobleman, Francis de la Roque, lord of Roberval, next undertook a colony; having obtained a charter as Viceroy of Norimbega, he sent Cartier with five vessels to Canada, in 1541. Cartier built a fort at Quebec, and wintered there; but in the spring the colonists were so discouraged, that they compelled him to return, so that Roberval, who soon after arrived, had to begin all anew. He did not, however, despair, but after remaining a year returned to France for supplies. For several years he was prevented from revisiting his colony, and at last died on his way to it, in 1549. Thus ended, during the sixteenth century, the French attempt to colonize Canada.

3. Meanwhile great changes had taken place in Europe. Soon after the discovery of America, the religious dissensions, called the Reformation, broke out. Men in various countries, under the name of Reformers, began to preach new religions. Many, at their teaching, left the only Church then existing,

2. Who among the French first proposed colonizing? Who obtained a patent? What new voyages were made? What became of Roberval's colony?

and formed sects apart, under the general name of Protestants. In some countries they soon got the upper hand. They attempted to do so in France, but the Catholics warned by the result in England, Sweden and Germany, that their religious liberty was at stake, if the Protestants succeeded, resisted with all the energy of despair.

The hope of sharing in the rich plunder afforded by the Catholic establishments, drew to the ranks of the Protestants, the lawless and desperate. A long and bloody struggle ensued: as the Catholics beheld their churches pillaged, their clergy and religious massacred, and all that was holy profaned, they retaliated, and a series of massacres ensued.

4. Amid this bloody struggle, Admiral Coligni, the great leader of the Huguenots, or French Protestants, began to look around for a place of retreat, in case they failed to secure the supreme power in France. America, by its distance, invited him to found a colony there: and he attempted one in Brazil, but failed. He then endeavored to establish one in Florida.

Having, during a moment of peace, obtained the approbation of Charles IX., he sent out John Ribault with two small vessels, in February, 1562. The expedition was made up in part of a military force, but it avoided the track of the Spanish vessels, and at last reached the river May, now called St. Johns. Here Ribault landed, and kneeling to thank God

8. What was meanwhile taking place in Europe? What did the Protestants destroy? What ensued?

4. What leader projected French colonies? Where did he attempt

for his success, planted a column with the arms of France, amid a crowd of wondering but friendly natives.

He next explored the coast as far north as Port Royal, and allured by its beauty, built a small fort near Beaufort, to which he gave the name of Charlesfort, in honor of the king. There he left thirty men under the command of Albert de la Pierria, and sailed back to France, which he found again the scene of war.

Meanwhile the garrison of Charlesfort, instead of making any attempt to cultivate the ground, spent their days in idleness. Quarrels soon arose; their houses and all that they had were consumed by fire. The charity of the natives alone saved them from utter starvation. At last, after killing their commander, they put to sea under Nicholas Barre, and after being compelled to eat one of their number, were picked up by an English vessel in 1563.

Undaunted by this failure, Coligni, as soon as another pause occurred in the wars, despatched René Laudonnière to Florida. This expedition, in part fitted out by the king, sailed April 22, 1564, from Havre, and running through the Leeward Isles, entered the St. Johns, after a voyage of just two months. On landing Laudonnière was joyfully received by Saturiona, the paracoussi or king, and led to Ribault's column. Laudonnière, charmed with the place and the people, allured too by a plate of silver,

them? Who was sent to Florida, and in what year? Where did Ribault build a fort and leave a garrison? What was its fate? Who was next sent out by Coligny? What fort did Laudonnière build?

resolved to build a fort at the spot; and fort Caroline was soon thrown up of wood and earth.

5. Instead of securing a permanent peace with all his neighbors, he entered into a treaty with Saturiona, to attack an inland king, who possessed rich mines of silver; but finding his treaty too perilous, took some prisoners from Saturiona by force, in order to gain the good will of the rich prince. Laudonnière by this step made Saturiona his enemy: and by his strictness induced his own people to mutiny. He saved his life, only by granting passports to some of the mutineers; and these, to the number of 66, set out in two barks to cruise as pirates against the Spaniards. This was the more dangerous, as it made the whole colony, in the eyes of the Spanish authorities, a nest of pirates; and, as almost all the corsairs of the time were Frenchmen, who assumed to be Protestants, their cruelty to religious and priests, had made them still more hated by the Spaniards and Portuguese.

The party in question, captured several vessels, and took the Spanish governor of Jamaica; but one of their barks was finally taken, though the other escaped and returned to Florida. While the storm was thus brewing which was to ruin them all, those who remained had made war on an Indian king in the interior, in order to obtain provisions: and failing in this, were about to forsake the country, when they were opportunely relieved by Sir John Hawkins, who accidentally entered the harbor with his fleet.

5. What foolish step did he take? How did he offend his ally? Of what were his own men guilty? Who saved them from starvation?

6. Soon after this, Ribault again appeared on the 29th of September, with seven ships. He had been sent out by the government to replace Laudonnière, who was summoned back to stand his trial on certain charges made against him. Friendly chiefs came to greet Ribault, and offered to lead him to a country rich in gold, perhaps only in order to free themselves from unwelcome guests.

While all were elate with this new hope, five large Spanish vessels suddenly entered the river and anchored by the French. They were the ships of Melendez, sent from Spain to colonize Florida and root out the French. As the piratical party had returned to Fort Caroline, the French, when the Spanish vessels entered, had their misgivings, and slipping their cables stood out to sea, pursued, but in vain, by Melendez: who finally made land at St. Augustine, while the French returned to their original port. There a stormy council was held. Laudonnière wished to fortify their position; but was overruled by Ribault, who set out with almost the whole force to attack the Spaniards by sea, leaving Laudonnière with 85 men, women and children, in the fort.

A terrible storm drove the French ships off, and dashed them to pieces at a moment when Melendez was in their power: and they were thus thrown helpless on the coast, having lost all but their lives. Meanwhile Melendez saved from their attack, and ignorant of their fate, fortified his position, and set

6. Who arrived in September with aid and as successor to Laudonnière? What now alarmed the colony? What foolish step did Ribault take? What befell him? What step did the Spanish General Melendez

out by land to attack Fort Caroline. Led by a French prisoner, he traversed the morasses and forests for three days, and reached the fort on the 21st of September, 1565. The haze of a rainy morning, enabled him to attain their very doors, before the sentinels were aware of his approach. The cry, "To arms!" rang out too late. The Spaniards were already in the place, slaughtering all before them. None escaped but Laudonnière, and a few who with him reached a small French vessel in the river, and sailed for France. In the fort, the women and children alone were spared.

Ribault and his party, in two separate divisions, soon after surrendered to Melendez without a blow, relying on ambiguous expressions, but were like those taken in arms at Fort Caroline, butchered in cold blood. More than 600 are said to have fallen in this massacre, which ranks Melendez with Cromwell and the many faithless butchers, whose names disgrace the annals of every country. Such was the result of all Coligni's projects of colonization. The Catholic De Gourgues, soon after avenged the massacre of Ribault; but France made no other attempt to colonize Florida.

7. In the north, however, the Marquis de la Roche, having succeeded to Roberval's patent, attempted in 1598 to plant a colony on Sable Island, where he left 40 convicts. After exploring the coast for a time, he was driven out to sea by storms, and unable to reach

take? When did he surprise the French fort? What became of Ribault and his force? What are we to think of Ribault? Who avenged the massacre?

Sable Island, returned to France. There the state of the country prevented his aiding his poor colonists, who were preserved only by some cattle from a Spanish ship, which had multiplied in the island, until they were at last taken off.

Such were the unsuccessful efforts of France.

8. We now pass to the unsuccessful efforts made by England to plant settlements in North America. The discovery by Cabot had been followed only by the opening of English fisheries in Newfoundland, which were protected by parliament, as early as 1548.

Mary's marriage with Philip, by making known the hardy spirit and dazzling success of Spanish adventurers, raised up a like spirit in England; and England's present naval superiority is due in no small degree to that temporary connection with Spain.

In 1576, the hardy Frobisher, by an exploring voyage to the coast of Labrador, had drawn attention to that part of the continent, and a few years after, Sir Humphrey Gilbert obtained of Queen Elizabeth, a charter "for such remote heathen and barbarous lands as he might discover." He accordingly sailed from England on the 11th of June, 1583, with five vessels, and passing the great bank, anchored at St. John's, Newfoundland. Here he found a number of fishing vessels of various nations. He then took possession of the country, and was looking about for a site for his colony, when the loss of one ship and the disorderly conduct of his men, induced him to return, but he never reached England.

7. Who attempted a colony in the north?

8. What patent did Gilbert obtain? What did he effect? Who next undertook a colony? Whom did he send out in 1584?

The celebrated Sir Walter Raleigh, a brother-in-law of Gilbert, had been interested in his colonial project, and now resolved on a new attempt. In April, 1584, he dispatched two vessels under Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, to explore the coast further south. On the feast of the Visitation of the Blessed Virgin, they discovered the coast of what was soon called Virginia. They entered Ocracock inlet, and after taking possession of Wocoken Island, returned to give the Queen a most flattering description of the new land.

9. Resolving to plant a colony, Raleigh soon sent over more than a hundred settlers, in seven ships, under Ralph Lane as Governor. The ships commanded by Sir Richard Grenville were nearly lost off Cape Fear, which then received its name. The colonists landed on Roanoke Island, and began a settlement, in July, 1585, but were unfortunately at once embroiled with the natives, and even had the folly to burn an Indian town. On the departure of the fleet, the settlers were left completely at the mercy of the natives, who had formed a plot for their extermination, when the beleagured colonists descried the white sails of an English ship. The pirate Drake was coasting along, and at their entreaty he took them all on board, and the place was abandoned in June, 1586.

Grenville soon after arriving, looked in vain for the colonists; then desirous of keeping up the establishment, left fifteen men, who met the fate intended

9. Where was a colony planted in 1585? What was the end of the colony? What subsequent attempts were made? Where was a settlement

for their predecessors, for they were all massacred by the Indians.

In 1587, a new party sailed for the Chesapeake, but landed at Roanoke, and commenced a new settlement under White as their Governor. The next year a vessel sent by Raleigh to their relief, was taken by the French, and the Spanish armada prevented his sending another before 1590: then no traces of the colony could be found at Roanoke, though an inscription seemed to announce that they had retreated to some friendly Indians at Croatan. No effort was made to discover them at the time, and the survivors were in all probability adopted by the Indians.

Another English settlement was hurriedly made, and as hurriedly abandoned, at Elizabeth Island, in Buzzard's Bay, by Bartholomew Gosnold, who sailed from Falmouth on the 26th of March, 1602, and was the first who steered directly across the Atlantic. He reached the coast of Massachusetts in May, named Cape Cod, Elizabeth Island and Buzzard's Bay. On one of the islands he built a fort and store-house, but the party refused to stay, and the place was abandoned.

Thus far all English attempts to form permanent settlements on the coast were unsuccessful. Those in the south especially, those in the north, in a great measure, failed, from their gold hunting; when the only means of success lay in a careful preparation, prudence, and industry, particularly in the cultivation

begun by Gosnold? What caused the failure of these English colonies? What was the only result of these attempts?

of the ground. This neglected, no settlement could be aught but precarious, and all consequently failed. No benefit had resulted from all the attempts, except a knowledge of the potato and of tobacco, both of which Raleigh introduced into Europe.





CHAPTER IV.

SUCCESSFUL ATTEMPTS TO SETTLE.

FLORIDA.

1. THE motive which impelled the expedition of Tristan de Luna, soon induced a more successful one. Just as Villafañe abandoned Santa Cruz, the great India Fleet, from Mexico, commanded by Peter Melendez, was scattered by a storm, and one vessel, containing his only son and many relatives, disappeared. After his arrival in Spain, Melendez wished to return in search of his son, but was arrested on a charge made by some of his discontented officers. On his liberation he asked leave to proceed to Florida, and was permitted to do so, on condition of his settling there. This he undertook, and as news of the French colony had arrived, he was ordered to root it out. At last, in 1565, he sailed with 2,600 men, in 34 vessels, as Adelantado of Florida, to plant a colony and take possession of the country. His charter was ample, and so great his resources, that almost the entire armament was fitted out at his own expense.

1. What interested Melendez in Florida? On what conditions was he permitted to explore it? When did he sail, and with what armament?

On the way his fleet was scattered by storms, some vessels put back, one was taken by the cruizers of Fort Caroline, and only five vessels, carrying 1,000 men, soldiers, farmers, mechanics and ecclesiastics, reached the St. John's and anchored beside the French vessels, as we have seen. Although inferior to the French in numbers, he pursued them, and failing to overtake them, descended as far as the St. Augustine, and landed with all pomp and ceremony, on the 8th of September, 1565. On that day Melendez, amid the roar of artillery, and the sound of martial music, with his banner floating to the breeze, was met by the chaplain, who intoned the Te Deum. Advancing to the cross, he and his followers knelt and kissed it. Then after the services of the Church, he took possession in the name of Catholicity and Spain. A slight fortification had already been thrown up, and all were soon busily employed in erecting the necessary buildings. While these were going on, and after some of his vessels had departed, the French ships appeared before the place, but were, fortunately for him, unable to cross the bar, and soon after driven off by a storm.

2. Melendez was now in a critical condition; calling a council of his officers, he resolved to attack the French fort by land, hoping to surprise it in the absence of the fleet. Traversing the forests and marshes, Melendez at last, on the 20th of September, reached Fort Caroline, and by favor of a mist was at the very gates before he was discovered. The sentinel

When did he land, and what city did he found? How did he escape a French attack?

gave the alarm, but was cut down, and the Spaniards poured into the fort, cutting down all they met. Many were killed, many taken; the rest escaped to the woods, or the vessels in the river. Melendez now changed the name of the fort to San Mateo, and having built a chapel, left a garrison there, and returned in triumph to St. Augustine, which, by the unwearied exertions of his brother, had been put in a state of complete defence.

Soon after this the French, under Ribault, who had been shipwrecked on the shore, surrendered to Melendez, in several divisions, relying on his compassion; but that commander, with a cruelty seldom equalled, put them almost all to death, staining his reputation as founder of a colony with a deed of blood, and perhaps of treachery. Hearing soon after that some French were intrenched at Cape Cannaveral, he marched there and summoned them to surrender. They laid down their arms and escaped with life.

3. Melendez, now master of Florida, sailed to Havana, to learn tidings of his scattered fleet. As these arrived, he sent aid to his establishments in Florida, and setting out with several vessels, began to explore the coast, and seek his son. On his way he entered into friendly relations with the cruel and powerful chiefs of Is and Carlos, but found no traces of his son, the shipwrecked mariners having been generally put to death.

Meanwhile San Mateo was burnt; a revolt took

2. What plan did Melendez now take? What success had he? What became of Ribault?

place at St. Augustine, which was with difficulty suppressed, and to crown their misfortunes, the Indians near the town, instigated by French fugitives, refused to sell provisions, cut off 120 of the Spaniards, and at last by burning arrows set fire to the store-house, by which the Spaniards lost a great quantity of munitions, clothes, with the standards of Melendez

4 Hearing of this, that unwearied commander stopped the coast-survey, and returned to St. Augustine in March; but even his presence could not quell the disturbance: the mutineers held out at San Mateo, and part of his force sailed off from St. Augustine against his will. Still with a small body of faithful adherents, he sailed to San Mateo, reduced all to submission, visited Guale and St. Helena, building fort St. Philip at the latter place, and leaving Stephen de Alas in command, with 110 men.

Having thus explored the coast from the 25th to the 32d degree, and established his posts, he returned in May, to St. Augustine, to the joy of the people. Convening his council, he resolved to remove the fort to the entrance of the bar, and in ten days, the new fort was in a state of defence.

His period of difficulty was now over; vessels arrived from Spain with reinforcements and provisions, both of which had been refused him by the Royal officers in the West Indies. Having placed garrisons in his three forts, he explored the St. John's

8. What happened while Melendez was exploring the coast? Who attacked the Spaniards?

4. Who reduced the insurgents? What new fort did he build? Where did he attempt a mission?

for a considerable distance, and sent a party with two Dominicans to begin a post in Chesapeake Bay, and another under Reynoso, to build a fort at Carlos. Having thus founded his colony, and set faithful missionaries to gain and civilize the Indians, Melendez sailed to Spain in 1567.

5. During his absence, a French fleet arrived off San Mateo, led by the Catholic nobleman, Dominic de Gourgues, a fiery Gascon, who had resolved to avenge the massacre of Ribault's men. He reached Florida in May, 1568, and being joined by an Indian chief, attacked a small Spanish fort north of the river, took it, and another on the south. Villaroel, the Governor of San Mateo, alarmed at their success, sent out a party of 60 men; but when these were cut to pieces, he abandoned his fort and fled, losing many in the woods.

Gourgues thus master of the place, hung his prisoners on the surrounding trees, and distributing some of the booty to his savage allies, sailed off, having effaced crime by crime: a course which is never justifiable.

Melendez returned in April, 1569, with several Jesuit missionaries, rebuilt San Mateo, and sent Father Segura and his companions, with a converted chief, to the Chesapeake, to begin a mission there. On arriving in those parts, the chief apostatized and massacred all the missionaries, to the number of eight. Soon after this Melendez returned to Spain,

5. What did Gourgues do in 1568? What became of the Spanish commander? What did Gourgues do with his prisoners? What was Melendez' last act? What became of Segura? When did Melendez die?

and having been appointed to lead the great Armada, died at Santander on the 17th of September, 1574, universally regarded as the ablest naval commander of his time.

6. The death of Melendez was a fatal blow to Florida. Destitute of his resources and enterprise, succeeding governors abandoned the more advanced posts to the north, and centred their forces chiefly at St. Augustine and San Mateo; as the English in 1583 attempted to colonize Carolina. Three years after, Drake, the English pirate, attacked the fort of St. Augustine, and soon took it, after which he marched on the town, and setting fire to it reduced it to ashes. The inhabitants who had retreated, soon returned, however, and once more began to rebuild their little town, which with help from Havana they soon accomplished.

Soon after, zealous Franciscan missionaries converted many of the Indians near the towns, and were in hopes of gaining all, when a young chief formed a conspiracy to cut them all off, and massacre the Spaniards in Florida. In one day, in September 1597, five missionaries were killed; but a chief who had remained faithful, defeated the insurgents with great slaughter, and peace was again restored. New missionaries subsequently arrived, and eventually most of the Florida Indians became Christians.

In 1638 the Apalaches declared war, and being joined by many other tribes, placed the little colony

6. How did his death affect Florida? What did Drake do in 1583? What tragic occurrence took place in 1597? What war broke out in 1638?

in great peril; but were finally defeated, and compelled in punishment to furnish a certain number of men annually, to labor on the fortifications and other public works. In consequence of this revolt, a post was begun among the Apalaches, and steps taken to convert them.

7. Some years later, the attempt of La Salle to colonize Louisiana, alarmed the Spaniards, and at the same time the Yamassees joined the English and sacked the mission of St. Catharine's, after pillaging the church. The government now determined to prevent encroachments, and after much discussion, began a settlement at Pensacola Bay. Pensacola was accordingly founded by Pes, in 1693, amid great religious pomp; the settlers chanting the Te Deum before a statue of the Blessed Virgin, patroness of the settlement. Don Andres de Arriola, who came out as Governor in 1696, soon made Pensacola one of the strongest places on the gulf.

Such was the position of the Spanish colony of Florida at the beginning of the 18th century. It consisted of the towns of St. Augustine and Pensacola, with forts in various places, and numerous villages of converted Indians, and missionary stations scattered over the country. The land is not fertile, and this prevented colonists from flocking into the country, but sugar and cotton were raised to a considerable extent. The subsequent history of the colony, being blended with that of the neighboring French and English colonies, we leave it for a time.

7. What new town was founded in 1693? by whom? What induced the Spaniards to found it? What was the state of the Spanish colony at the beginning of the eighteenth century?

CANADA AND ACADIA.

8. We have just traced the separate history of the Spanish colony of Florida down to the close of the seventeenth century. We now turn to the northern part, and see the French succeed in laying the foundation of a permanent colony, which in its greatest power extended from the Kennebec and the mouth of the St. Lawrence to Lake Superior, and thence south to the Gulf of Mexico. It thus included much of the present territory of the United States.

The patent granted to Roberval, passed through many hands, and in 1603 was vested in Peter du Guast, Sieur de Monts, as Lieutenant-General and Vice-Admiral of all the country between the 40th and 46th degrees of North latitude. Sailing in March, 1604, with two vessels, he landed on Boone Island, at the mouth of the St. Croix, where he cleared the ground and began a settlement; but finding the position unsuitable, removed in the spring across the Bay of Fundy, and founded Port Royal, now called Annapolis: his colony assumed the name of Acadia.

The chief object of this French settlement was trade, and De Monts transferred Port Royal to Port-Royal, but was soon compelled by government to commence a new settlement on the St. Lawrence. To effect this he sent out, in 1608, Samuel Champlain, a navigator who had been for several years con-

8 Who next succeeded in founding a colony? What was its greatest extent? Who founded Port Royal? Who was sent to found a new settlement?

neected with Canada, and had explored the coast from Cape Malabar, to which he gave its name, to the mouth of the St. Lawrence, and who had ascended that river above Montreal.

9. Champlain landed on the 3d of July, 1608, and throwing up some sheds, began to clear the ground and lay out the town of Quebec, the second French post in the land, long the centre of their power in the north and west, and the residence of the Viceroy and Governors of New France, as this colony was termed.

The two French colonies thus formed were in a manner cut off from each other. Acadia, as claimed by the French, comprehended what is now called Maine, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. This territory was soon granted out to various proprietors, and little colonies formed along the coast. Among these was one formed on Mount Desert Island by some Jesuit missionaries, who, after being cruelly treated at Port Royal, resolved to begin a missionary settlement, under the protection of the Marchioness of Guercheville. They began their colony in 1613, but it was attacked by Argal from Virginia, who killed one of the missionaries, and carried off the rest with all their settlers.

The English soon after took Port Royal, but the country remained French, and was occupied by its colonists and fishing companies, while missionaries converted the Indians from the Kennebec to Gaspe, and made them a powerful barrier against the English.

9. When did Champlain found Quebec? What missionary settlement was formed, and what was its history? Who soon took Port Royal?

The state of Maine was a contested territory and the adverse claims to it led to great disputes and bloody wars, in which Acadia repeatedly changed hands, as we shall hereafter see.

10. Champlain, the Father of Canada, at once sought the friendship of the Indians, and for ever attached to France the Montagnais and Algonquins on the St. Lawrence, and the Hurons on Lake Huron, the three great tribes that occupied Canada. These were all at war with the Iroquois or Five Nations, in what is now New York, and Champlain with his Indian allies invaded the territory of the Iroquois, and defeated them on the shores of Lake George, in 1609. For several years Champlain was untiring in his endeavors for Canada, making several visits to France, engaging noblemen to favor, and merchants to aid the colony. He was not unmindful of the interests of religion, and in 1615, brought out some Recollect Fathers, to minister to the whites, and convert the Indians. One of them, Father Le Caron, immediately set out for the Huron country, and Champlain followed to join a new Huron army against the Iroquois. The expedition set out, entered western New York, and attempted to take an Iroquois fort, but was defeated and compelled to retire, Champlain himself being wounded.

11. Canada now passed through several hands in France, without gaining any thing in point of numbers or wealth, except in the arrival of the Jesuit missionaries prepared to found establishments and carry on

10. What tribes became allies of Champlain? On what nation did he make war? Where was the first battle fought? Whom did he bring out in 1609? What new expedition did Champlain attempt?

missions without being a charge to the colony. Amid all the changes, Champlain maintained his command, and gradually won respect. The Iroquois for a time remained at peace; but having, in 1628, murdered a French envoy, Champlain was preparing to chastise them, when a new enemy appeared. An English fleet commanded by a French refugee, named David Kertk, entered the St. Lawrence, and summoned Champlain to surrender. The French at first defied him, but as they were cut off from supplies and provisions, they surrendered in July, 1629, Champlain, the missionaries, and many of the settlers being carried off. The two nations soon, however, regulated all differences, and by a treaty signed the 29th of March, 1632, England restored Canada to France. On this, Champlain was again sent out as Governor; missionaries, traders, and settlers followed, and the colony was renewed on its former basis.

12. By degrees new settlements were formed. Three Rivers was founded by Champlain in 1634, to give a more convenient trading-post to the Huron flotilla, which came down every year to sell furs to the settlers. In December of the following year, 1635, the Jesuits by the aid of the Marquis de Gamache, founded the college of Quebec, the oldest university north of Mexico, and of which the University Laval may be considered the continuation.

Champlain had now founded a colony, and explored

11. What retarded the progress of the colony? What threatened war in 1628? What new enemy appeared? When did Quebec surrender, and to whom? When was Canada restored, and who was made governor?

12. What new settlement was founded in 1634? What college soon

the country of the Great Lakes; he saw two thriving French posts in the wilderness, missionaries converting the natives, the education of the people cared for, and died amid the universal regret of the French and Indians in Canada, on the 25th of December, 1635, leaving a name unsullied and unimpeached. He was a skilful navigator, a brave commander, a prudent Governor, and, above all, a pious man.

Soon after the death of Champlain, the Iroquois again made war on the Hurons, and prevented a projected post in the country of that people. The missionaries continued their labors there, amid every danger, and Ursuline and hospital nuns arrived at Quebec to open schools and hospitals; so that when peace was made for a time in 1640, every hope of a rapid increase was entertained. Yet the colony, neglected by the trading company, would have failed but for the exertions of the missionaries and the interest which they excited.

13. In 1642, Montreal was founded by a pious association formed in France, of which Mr. Olier was the soul. This new post became the bulwark of Canada, for war immediately broke out, and the Iroquois attacked the French as well as the Hurons. They surprised a flotilla from Quebec, and carried off captive to the Mohawk the celebrated Jesuit missionary, Father Isaac Jogues, and two other Frenchmen, who were subjected to every torture, until he at last escaped by the help of the Dutch.

after? When did Champlain die? What was his character? What broke out soon after? Who arrived in the colony? What alone upheld the colony?

13. What led to the founding of Montreal? What Huron missionary

To defend the colony, Montmagny, the Governor, raised fort Richelieu at the mouth of the Sorel, and gallantly repulsed the Mohawks who attacked it, although the Indians were well supplied with fire-arms purchased of the Dutch. They continued the war in small parties, attacking the French and their allies in most cases with great success, and carrying off many prisoners to torture.

After this the Mohawks proposed peace, and a treaty was finally made at Three Rivers, in July, 1645, by which the Indians promised to lay down the hatchet; but the Mohawks soon after killed Father Jogues, who went as a missionary among them, and renewed the war.

14. This new war proved fatal to the Hurons, who were almost entirely destroyed, and were compelled to fly from their country, after seeing their faithful missionaries killed among them.

In the colony the war was almost as disastrous; the French posts were blockaded, the Governor of Three Rivers was killed, a priest carried off from Quebec, and men durst not leave their forts to reap the harvests. The Governor attempted to secure the aid of New England, but failing in this, joyfully accepted the proposals of peace, made by the Iroquois, in 1653.

French missionaries immediately proceeded to Onondaga, and a colony was begun in 1656, on the

was taken, and by whom? What fort was built? How did the war end? What renewed the war?

14. What was the result of this new war? What was its effect in the colony? When was peace restored? Where was a new settlement begun? When did it end? Why was it abandoned?

northern shore of the lake, which lasted till March 1658. At this time the French, discovering a plot formed by the Indians to massacre them, secretly escaped, and returned to Montreal, with the missionaries who had been instructing the Onondagas, Cayugas and Senecas.

15. The old desolating war was again renewed, and lasted with little interruption for many years. During it, in 1660 the Seneschal de Lausun and two eminent clergymen were killed, and numbers of the colonists cut off in battle, or by ambuscades. The colony would have been ruined, had they not had a firm friend in Garakontie, an Onondaga chief, who saved the French prisoners, and for a time obtained peace in 1661. During this interval the missionaries, with their usual enterprise, extended their labors. Father Le Moyne began a mission at Onondaga, Father Menard another on Lake Superior, where he perished of want, and Father Dablon endeavored to reach Hudson's Bay.

The war was not the only misery of Canada. The colony was still in the hands of a commercial company, but when that body surrendered their charter, in 1662, a new era commenced. The king sent out troops, settlers, and supplies; and appointed Mr. De Mesy, Governor. That officer immediately organized a regular colonial Government, consisting of the Governor, and a council composed of the Bishop, the intendants of Justice, Police, Finances and Marine, and four councillors.

15. Who obtained a truce? What did the missionaries accomplish in this interval of peace? What beneficial change was made in 1662? Who formed the council?

16. In 1665, the Marquis de Tracy was appointed Viceroy, Courcelle Governor, and Talon Intendant. They were all able men, and brought effective aid to the settlement. A number of hardy and industrious settlers, with a large supply of live stock were brought over, and at the same time a regiment of troops arrived, to carry on the Iroquois war. Three forts were immediately built on the Sorel River, and the enemy began to retire. The Western cantons sued for peace, the Mohawks and Oneidas held out. Courcelle marched in the depth of winter with 500 men in snow-shoes, against the Mohawks, but found only a deserted village, after his long and painful march. It was hoped that this would bring them to terms, but they still defied the French.

The next year Tracy, with 1,200 French and 100 Indians, marched in person against the Mohawks, but met no enemy. The villages were deserted, so that the French, after carrying off the immense stores of Indian corn which the Indians had laid up, fired the towns and returned. The Mohawks were now humbled and sued for peace. This was granted the more readily, as they asked for missionaries. Father Fremin and other zealous men at once repaired to the various tribes in New York, and soon made numerous converts, obtaining a public renunciation of idolatry in some cantons. Still the debauchery of the unconverted caused many of the new Christians to remove soon after to Canada. As the missionaries had grounds

16. What aid did Tracy bring out? Who marched against the Mohawks? With what success? What was Tracy's expedition? What was its result? Who began missions? To what did these lead?

at Laprairie, the Catholic Indians of New York settled there, and soon formed a new Iroquois tribe, commonly called the Caughnawagas. Their village was long one of the bulwarks of Canada.

17. These were not the only missions, which the peace enabled the Jesuits to carry out. The territory bordering on Lake Michigan and Lake Superior was explored by Allouez, Dablon and Marquette, the latter of whom after preaching to bands of the Illinois, set out in 1673, to explore the great river of the west, and found a mission in their country. He sailed down the Mississippi to the mouth of the Arkansas, and thus gave France a claim to the great west. On his return, he founded a mission in Illinois, and revisiting it the next year, died on the shore of Lake Michigan.

In 1670, Talon returned to Canada as Intendant, and brought out 500 families as emigrants, but not, unfortunately, well selected; hence the moral tone of the colony was injured, and vice began to prevail. Courcelle's term of office was soon to expire; but he concluded a new peace in 1670, between the Iroquois and Ottawas, restored tranquillity to all the Indian country, which the small-pox rendered complete; for the Indians in the colony were almost entirely destroyed, and the Iroquois greatly reduced by that scourge of the Indians.

18. The celebrated Count Frontenac arrived as governor, in 1672, and acting on a plan of De Cour-

17. What other parts were explored and evangelized? Who first sailed down the Mississippi? In what year did many emigrants arrive? How many? What swept off vast numbers of Indians?



celle's, founded Fort Frontenac, where Kingston now is, and aided La Salle, an adventurer, to explore the west. That enterprising man built a vessel at Niagara, and sailed through Lakes Erie, St. Claire, Huron, to Mackinaw. He also explored the Mississippi to its mouth, and built a fort in Illinois. He returned to France to obtain authority and means to found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi, and sailed with several vessels in 1684; he arrived off the coast of Texas, and here the naval commander disembarked him and sailed off. La Salle's storeship was lost, and after struggling with his difficulties till spring, he set out by land to find the Mississippi and reach the Illinois; but his men revolted and killed him on the way. Those whom he left in Texas were massacred by the Indians, or taken by the Spaniards, who immediately occupied all Texas, establishing missions in various parts.

19. Frontenac had been superseded by De la Barre, who in 1684 invaded New York to punish the Senecas, but returned after effecting a hollow peace. His successor, Denonville, entrapped some Iroquois chiefs, whom he sent to France, and rekindled the war, the first result of which was the ruin of the Iroquois missions. Bent on carrying on the war, he too marched against the Senecas; but though he defeated them in a skirmish and burnt their towns, he could

18. What did La Salle build? What lakes did he sail through? What river did he explore? Where did he build a fort? What did he next attempt? What became of him?

19. What did De la Barre do? What treachery did Denonville commit? What was the result of the war? Who was sent out as governor?

not reduce them. They ravaged the colony, so that at last he was compelled to abandon Fort Frontenac, and ask for the return of the chiefs whom he had seized. The government on this restored Frontenac, who arrived once more in 1689.

VIRGINIA.

20. The success of the Spaniards and French led to new English efforts. Associations were formed for colonizing America, and in 1606, James I. chartered the Plymouth and the London companies, and granted them extensive territories in America. The Plymouth company, of which Lord Popham was the leading spirit, received a grant of all between the 41st and 45th degrees; but after a vain attempt to settle at the mouth of the Kennebec, abandoned the country.

The London Company received all between the 34th and 38th degrees, and made better preparations. Three vessels were sent out in 1606, under Christopher Newport, and missing Roanoke, reached the Chesapeake in April, 1607. Naming Capes Charles and Henry, they entered the James River, and landing, founded the city of Jamestown. This colony consisted of 105 persons, chiefly adventurers, unfit for a new settlement; they were to be governed by a council of seven appointed by a supreme council in England, who were in turn nominated by the king. Of the council in Virginia, the chief were Gosnold, and Smith, the father of the colony.

20. What two companies were chartered by James I.? What did the Plymouth company obtain, and what did they effect? Who was sent out by the London company? When was Jamestown founded? Of what did the colony consist? How was it to be governed?

21. Leaving Wingfield, the first governor, to organise the colony, Smith began to explore the country, making peace with Powhatan, chief of all the Virginian tribes. The colony meanwhile by sickness, indolence and misgovernment, was reduced to the brink of ruin; but on Smith's taking the command in November, rapidly improved: for he restored order, enforced obedience and industry, and collected abundant supplies of provisions from the natives. While Virginia was thus advancing, it was suddenly alarmed by a new danger. The gallant Smith, while exploring the Chickahominy, was surprised by the Indians, and after beholding his comrades slain, was led off as a prisoner through their numerous towns to the capital of Powhatan. Here he was condemned to death, and was about to be executed, when Pocahontas, the daughter of the Indian king, interceded for him and obtained his release. Her kindness did not end here; she had Smith conducted by an escort to Jamestown, and ever after remained a firm friend to the English.

22. Sickness had meanwhile reduced the colony to less than forty, and the survivors resolved to leave the fatal country. Smith, however, assumed the command, and compelled all to remain till Captain Newport again arrived, bringing new settlers with supplies. These new-comers were chiefly gold-seekers, and instead of cultivating the ground, all turned to digging, washing, and shipping what they supposed to be gold dust.

21. What did Smith do? What was the state of the colony during his absence? What did he do on his return? What happened to him soon after?

After exploring the Chesapeake Bay, Smith was formally made President of the Council in September, 1608, and compelling all to work, soon placed the colony in a position of comparative safety: although but little was done in the way of cultivation.

Virginia had suffered from misgovernment; the London Company now solicited a new charter from the king, granting them all the coast two hundred miles north and south of James River, and authorizing them to appoint a Governor, who was to reside in Virginia. This charter was granted by the king, June 2, 1609, and Lord Delaware was appointed as governor.

23. The scheme of colonization now made rapid progress. Five hundred emigrants were immediately sent out in Newport's vessels, with Sir Thomas Gates, deputy governor, authorized to administer the government till Delaware's arrival. Unfortunately, a storm scattered the vessels, the emigrants reached Virginia, while Gates was driven to Bermuda.

The arrival of the emigrants, with the news of the new appointments, caused great trouble, which Smith suppressed; he compelled the new comers to submit to his regulations, and maintaining order awaited the arrival of Gates. Unfortunately, an explosion of gunpowder wounded him so severely, that he was compelled to sail for England, there being no competent surgeon in the colony. Leaving George Percy as

22. What did he do on his return to Jamestown? Who was appointed governor under a new charter?

23. Who led out new emigrants? What accident happened? What compelled Smith to return to England?

President of the Council, Smith bade adieu to Virginia.

24. Percy was unable to maintain the discipline enforced by Smith; the colonists again relapsed into idleness and insubordination; the Indians refused all supplies, and begun to cut off the stragglers near the town, and small parties in search of food. Famine reigned in Jamestown, and out of nearly five hundred left by Smith, only sixty were living at the end of six months, and these more like spectres than men, with no prospect but death.

At this juncture Sir Thomas Gates arrived in vessels that he had built at Bermuda, and disheartened at the fate of the numbers who had sailed with him from England, took off the survivors, and abandoning Jamestown, sailed down the river: at the mouth, however, they found Lord Delaware, with emigrants and supplies, and all returned to Jamestown.

Under the mild, but firm rule of Lord Delaware, the colony again began to prosper, and a religious tone began to pervade the people; but his health failed, and he was soon compelled to return to England, leaving the government in the hands of Percy. In the following year, 1611, Sir Thomas Dale arrived with liberal supplies, and assuming the government established martial law. Seeing the resources of the country, he urged the colonization so earnestly that Gates again came out with three hundred colonists, amply supplied with cattle and other necessaries.

24. What was the state of the colony after his departure? What prevented the total abandonment of the colony? What two governors restored the colony?

25. The English colony of Virginia was now permanently established. Jamestown was no longer a mere garrison; each settler received an allowance of land in fee, and a new settlement was begun in 1611, at Henrico; and the absolute power of the council in England was limited. An outrage perpetrated by Argal, nearly involved the colonists in an Indian war; for he, by treachery, carried off as a prisoner the lovely Pocahontas, who had saved Capt. Smith, and on many occasions shown herself the friend of the whites.

Pocahontas was instructed in the doctrines of Christianity by John Rolfe, who soon after, with her father's consent, married her, and thus laid the foundation of a permanent peace under which the Indians gradually dwindled away. So strong did the colony now become, that in the following year, 1614, Argal attacked the French in Maine and Nova Scotia, and piratically destroyed their settlements.

26. Under Deputy-Governor Yeardley, the Virginians in 1615 commenced the cultivation of tobacco, which immediately became the staple of the colony, its currency, and source of wealth; but when Argal succeeded him, avarice and tyranny checked industry and emigration. This led to the recall of Argal, and restoration of Yeardley as Captain-General, who in June, 1619, called the first Assembly, and founded the legislative freedom of Virginia.

Emigration increased under the care of Sandys, the treasurer of the company, who sent out 1261

25. What new settlement was formed? What outrage did Argal perpetrate? What became of Pocahontas? What was Argal's next exploit?

26. What cultivation began in 1615? What was Argal's administra-

persons in one year, among them nearly a hundred virtuous girls, who soon found husbands able and willing to pay the expenses of their passage.

The importation of negro slaves, in 1620, also facilitated the cultivation of the ground, and the hopes of the large cotton crops, led to increased settlements.

27. While Virginia was thus on the way of prosperity, Opechaneanough, who had succeeded his brother Powhatan and witnessed the decline of his race, formed a plot to exterminate the whites, and on the 22d of March, 1622, suddenly attacked all the settlements on James River. Jamestown and the posts near it had been warned in time, by an Indian convert; in the other villages 347 persons were cut off. An Indian war ensued, in which the natives were gradually swept away.

In June, 1624, the king dissolved the company, and Virginia became a royal colony, still reserving its Assembly; and when a few years later, Governor Harvey was suspected of plotting against their liberties, and favoring Maryland, he was forced for a time to leave the country. Sir William Berkeley is noted as an able governor, who restored peace and harmony, and so won Virginia to the royal cause, that it was the last English possession that submitted to Parliament after the death of Charles I. Then, by a treaty, its independence was virtually acknowledged; the Virgin-

tion? When did the first assembly meet? Who augmented the emigration? To what extent? When did slavery commence?

27. When did an Indian war break out? Who began it? How many were cut off? What did the king do in 1624? What did Sir William Berkeley do?

ians elected a new governor in 1652, and exercised the same privilege during the whole period of the Protectorate, while at the same time they claimed and enjoyed perfect commercial freedom.

NEW NETHERLAND AND NEW SWEDEN, NOW NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, AND DELAWARE.

28. The Hudson River and the country around it were discovered and named in 1609, by Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the Dutch service, who in a little craft called the Half-Moon, was seeking a northwest passage to India. During the month of September, he explored the river as far as Albany, and returned to Holland.

When Hudson had given a description of the country, its rich and fertile soil, its abundance of wild beasts, from which a great trade in furs could be carried on, vessels were despatched, and a few settlers, under Hendrick Corstiaensen, left on Manhattan Island, as early as 1613; a fort was built there in the following year, and in 1615, a second, called Fort Orange, was erected by Elkins on an island near Albany. A lucrative trade grew up with the Indians, all of whom were friendly to the new comers.

29. In 1621, the Dutch West India Company, newly incorporated, was invested with the power of colonizing America, and took immediate steps to advance the settlement. The country from the Delaware to the Connecticut was gradually explored, and

28. Who discovered the Hudson River? In what year? Where were settlements begun? What grew up?

29. What company obtained the entry? Where did they build?

in 1623, Cornelius May founded Fort Nassau, on the banks of the former river.

By this time the colony had acquired form, especially on Manhattan and Long Islands where some Walloons had settled, and Peter Minuits was appointed, in 1626, the first governor or director. The greatest step to colonization was the charter of privileges adopted in 1629, by which any one leading out a colony of fifty souls, obtained a large grant of land, over which he was to have great feudal rights, as Patroon. Under this clause attempts at settlement were made in various parts, even as far down as the present State of Delaware, and as far east as Hartford.

The Dutch had been on friendly terms with the Indians, the more so, as the colony was rather commercial than agricultural, and they sought to draw the furs to Manhattan. The Indians on the North River were Algonquins of various tribes, the Mohegans being the most powerful; the Indians on the Mohawk, and to the west, were the Iroquois or Five Nations, of whom the most warlike were the Mohawks, the enemies of the Mohegans.

In 1625, however, Daniel Krieckebreeck, commander at Fort Orange, had joined the Mohegans against the Mohawks, but his party was surprised, himself slain, and the rest cut off or dispersed. Fortunately for the colony, the Mohawks did not resent this interference, and peace was again restored.

fort in 1623? Who was the first governor? What was the charter of privileges? What Indians occupied the Hudson? What Indians lay on the Mohawk and west of it? What Dutch commander joined the Mohegans?

30. The colony of New Netherland was not, however, destined to enjoy repose. Some of the new villages were cut off by the Indians, the English began to encroach on the Connecticut and Delaware, and even claimed Long Island, while in 1638, a Swedish colony sent out by Chancellor Oxernstiern under Münits, once governor of New Netherland, entered the Delaware and founded Fort Christiana, capital of New Sweden, near the present city of Wilmington.

In 1641, the Indian aggressions were so frequent that the colonists, contrary to the commands of Governor Kieft, began an indiscriminate war of retaliation, in which the Indians were destroyed in great numbers, chiefly on Staten Island, Hoboken, Hempstead, Stamford and Esopus, now Kingston.

Governor Kieft soon after commended himself to posterity by his kindness to the French missionaries, two of whom, Father Jogues and Bressani, taken captive by the Mohawks, he ransomed and sent home to Europe, after supplying all their wants. Kieft on his recall, in 1647, left the Indian war unsettled, and it was not until 1663, that Stuyvesant finally obtained peace by the reduction of the Esopus Indians. These Indian wars were cruelly carried on, and many thousand Indians perished.

31. The Swedes, as we have seen, had settled on the Delaware in despite of the Dutch, and in 1654, under Risingh, surprised Fort Casimir, a Dutch post

30. When and by whom was New Sweden settled? What was the first place built? What Indian hostilities took place in New Netherland? What generous act did Kieft perform? Who succeeded Kieft? In what year? What war did he terminate?

on the site of Newcastle. On this, the West India Company ordered Stuyvesant to root out the Swedes, and he accordingly, in September, 1655, sailed with a force of 600 men to the Delaware, and reduced all the Swedish posts to the Dutch power.

During his absence the Indians again made war, and besieging New Amsterdam with a fleet of sixty-four canoes, ravaged the adjacent territory; but he soon compelled them to retire, and for many years the colony enjoyed great calm. In 1663, however, the Esopus Indians again burst on the village at mid-day, and killed 29 of the inhabitants, wounding more, and carrying off many prisoners. War ensued, and the Indians were finally reduced.

32. Meanwhile the people, of whom a considerable part were fugitives from New England intolerance, began to complain of Stuyvesant's government, and claimed a representative assembly, such as their English neighbors had. It was granted, but too late. In 1664, Richard Nicols appeared off the harbor, as the delegate of James, Duke of York, to whom Charles II. king of England had conveyed the colony. Stuyvesant endeavored to resist, but unsupported by the people, capitulated on the 8th of September, 1664, and the English flag was raised.

New Netherland was now divided, the part between the Delaware and the ocean was named New Jersey, and granted to Sir George Carteret; the rest

31. What colony did Stuyvesant now reduce? What occurred during his absence? What Indians renewed the war?

32. What did the settlers claim? Who appeared in 1664? On what pretext did they claim the country? How was the country now divided? To whom was New Jersey granted? To which did Delaware belong?

took the name of New York, a name which was also given to New Amsterdam, while Fort Orange assumed the name of Albany. Delaware, however, remained a part of New York.

NEW ENGLAND.

33. The colonies which we have already mentioned, were founded solely for commercial purposes, or as speculations of the proprietors, while those of New England, Maryland, Pennsylvania, of which we are now to speak, were in a great measure founded to afford a refuge from religious persecution in England.—

To understand this, we must recur to the period of the Reformation. Henry VIII. claimed for himself the spiritual supremacy previously attributed to the Pope, and separated England from the Holy See. Although hostile to Luther, he greatly weakened the Catholic party by suppressing the monasteries, by putting to death many eminent men, and by conferring high offices on concealed Lutherans.

On his death, the latter, led by Somerset and Cranmer, availed themselves of the minority of the young king to abolish the Catholic religion, and found a new creed enforcing adherence by severe penalties. This Somerset church was displeasing, not only to the Catholics, but also to many of the ultra Protestants. After a few years it was overthrown by Mary, who restored Catholicity, and checked the progress of the Reformers.

33. What colonies were founded to escape persecution? What position did Henry VIII. occupy as regards the Reformation? Who founded a new creed in England? What party grew up in opposition to it under Elizabeth?

34. Elizabeth, who succeeded Mary, restored the Somerset religion, but soon found that a strong Calvinist party had grown up, bitterly opposed to the Church of England, and seeking to abolish the bishops, and all ceremonies in religious worship. These Elizabeth resolved to crush, and she passed new and severe laws of uniformity, punishing not only the Catholics, but also the Separatists, as the new party were called: and her successor, James, pursued the same course, putting many Catholics to death, and harassing the Separatists.

The Catholics submitted to these invasions on their rights, and to the loss of their church property, but the Separatists could not brook the tyranny of the government. In 1600, a large number retired to Holland, but after some years stay finding it impossible to coalesce with the Dutch, they resolved to emigrate to America; and applying to the London Company for a patent, obtained one in 1619 suited to their wishes; and prepared to embark for the most northerly part of Virginia, having obtained means from some London merchants at exorbitant rates.

35. They left Delft Haven in, August, 1620, for England, and being joined by some others, sailed from Plymouth to the number of 100, in a small vessel, called the Mayflower, and after a long and dangerous voyage, arrived off Cape Cod on the 19th of November. After exploring the coast for a time, they land-

34. What did the Calvinists seek? What did Elizabeth do? How did the Catholics act? How did the Separatists act? Where did they then resolve to emigrate?

35. When did the first party set sail, and in what vessel? Where did

ed on the 21st of December, in a harbor to which they gave the name of Plymouth; and the rock on which they disembarked is still held in reverence by the people of New England as a precious relic.

This little colony had now to prepare habitations in a wild country in mid-winter; their sufferings were consequently great, and before spring forty-six died. But the survivors persevered, and were soon organized for self-government. As they had been driven beyond the limits of the Virginia Company, their charter was useless, and before landing they proceeded to elect as governor, John Carver, and drew up a plan of government.

The country in which they were, really belonged to the company of the West of England, or Plymouth Company; that body, however, after an ineffectual attempt to found a colony on the Kennebec under Popham, in 1607, abandoned all attempts at colonization, and merely sent vessels to trade, one of which was commanded by the celebrated Captain John Smith. In 1614, the founder of Virginia explored all the coast, and named the country New England.

This company finally dissolved, and in 1620, the very year that the Pilgrims set sail, King James incorporated a new company, called the Council of Plymouth, consisting of 40 members, and granted to them all the territory between the 40th and 48th degrees of latitude, with the fisheries, and a heavy duty on the tonnage.

they land? What steps did they take in the spring? Who was chosen governor? What efforts had the Plymouth company made to settle? What new company was incorporated in 1620? with what territory?

36. The Pilgrims at Plymouth were thus unconsciously under the authority of the Council of Plymouth. They were, however, rendering their little colony secure by friendly intercourse with the natives, all branches of the great Algonquin race, having concluded peace with their firm friend, Massasoit, Sachem of the Wampanoags, and by his influence awed into submission Canonicus, chief of the Narragansetts.

The Council of Plymouth was not unmindful of the Pilgrims; it granted them a charter, in 1621, and issued many grants to various parties, none of which led to any definite result. Meanwhile, small settlements began to be formed at various points along the coast, which were long in a weak condition.

37. In 1624 the Puritans of England resolved to imitate the Separatists, and under the influence of the Rev. Mr. White, a number came over and settled at Cape Ann: but as the new post did not prosper, White organized a company, obtained a grant of the Council, and in 1628 sent over a second company, under the charge of John Endicott, who settled at Salem with the remaining colonists of Cape Ann. By their influence at court, they obtained of the king, in 1629, a charter, incorporating them as the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England.

This company, possessing alike enthusiasm and means, soon sent over, under Endicott as governor, numerous settlers, and while Plymouth advanced slow

36. With whom did the colonists form alliances? When did they obtain a charter?

37. What did the Puritans do in 1624? Where did a second company

ly, Salem received such large accessions, that a part of the new comers founded Charlestown, in 1629, Dorchester, Roxbury, Cambridge, Watertown, and last of all Boston in the following year. This colony entered into close alliance with Plymouth, and adopting the church system of the Separatists, abolished the Church of England, and sent home to England two incorrigible settlers who attempted to adhere to the established church.

In 1630, nearly a thousand emigrants came out in fifteen ships, and among them most of the members of the company, with Winthrop their governor, who now transferred their sittings to America. The various towns formed themselves into little republics, and meeting in General Court at Boston, conferred the power of legislation on the governor and his assistants, authorizing the latter to elect the governor. They next carried out the separation from the English Church, and began to discipline the militia. Soon after they were building ships, trading along the coast, and opening commercial intercourse with the Dutch at Manhattan, and their own countrymen in Virginia.

38. In 1634, deputies from the eight principal towns met as the first representative court, and passed several important acts. Their position, however, became precarious, for though a large number of emigrants came over to escape from the measures of Laud, news arrived that a Governor-General of New

settle? When were they incorporated, and under what name? What new towns were soon formed? How did they act in religious matters? What happened in 1630? What steps did the colony now take?

38. When did the first representative court meet? What alarmed

England had been appointed, and that the English government had resolved to restore the system of English law. On this, the General Court resolved to resist; fortifications were erected and magazines prepared.

In the following year, Newburyport, Ipswich, Marblehead and Concord were begun, and the colonies attempted to drive the French from the Penobscot, but failed from a want of co-operation between Plymouth and Massachusetts. This year was also noted for the excommunication and banishment of Roger Williams, who had denied the power of the General Court in matters ecclesiastical, and lastly for the colonization of Connecticut, begun by Ludlow at Hartford, and by Winthrop at Saybrook.

39. Early in 1636, Williams, after a weary wintering in the woods, began under the protection of Massasoit, a plantation at Seekonk, but pursued by the government of Plymouth, proceeded to the head of Narragansett Bay, and obtaining a grant of land from Canonicus, head Sachem of the Narragansetts, founded Providence, now the capital of Rhode Island. In the same spring, Hooker and others joined the almost disheartened settlers at Hartford, and planted other towns in Connecticut.

About this time some whites were cut off on Block Island, and in Connecticut, by the Indians, and the colonists determined to make a war of extermination on the natives; Endicott led a force into Connec-

them? What steps did the colony take to resist? What were the chief events of the year 1636?

89. Where did Williams begin a settlement? Where did he next proceed? What was his new settlement called? What led to the Pequot war? What did Endicott do?

ticut in August, 1636, and burned two Pequot towns, after cutting off many of the Indians.

40. The natives now flew to arms, beleaguered Fort Saybrook, and ravaged the new settlements. They even formed a plan for a general union of the Indians against the whites, and would have gained Canonicus, Sachem of the Narragansetts, but for the mediation of Roger Williams.

Massachusetts had thus involved the settlements on the Connecticut in war, but instead of aiding them, now turned her whole attention to religious disputes. Mrs. Hutchinson, a religious enthusiast, had denied the necessity of good works, or the observation of the law to obtain salvation, and argued against the power of the colonial government to interfere in religious matters.

41. The people of Connecticut left to themselves, raised a force of ninety men, which under John Mason, accompanied by Uncas and sixty Mohegans set out to invade the Pequot territory. Descending the Connecticut River to its mouth, they were joined by Captain Underhill from Massachusetts, with twenty men, and sailed to Narragansett Bay. Here their force was further increased by the coming of Miantonomoh, and nearly 200 Narragansetts.

The Pequods lay east of the River Thames, and Mason now marched west, and after two days, came early in the morning of the 26th of May, 1637, to

40. How did the natives act? What saved the colony? In what was Massachusetts now involved?

41. How did the people of Connecticut act? Who commanded the troops? What chiefs joined them? Where did the Pequods lie? When

Fort Mystic, before the Indians were stirring. Taken by surprise, the Pequods fought till their fort was entered and their cabins in flames, but in attempting to escape they were almost all cut to pieces by the English, who had completely surrounded the fort. The Pequods lost several hundred, and only seven escaped, while the English loss was comparatively trifling.

Mason now resolved to retreat, as his men were exhausted, and another Pequot fort was in the neighborhood. Just as he reached the coast, he was overtaken by Sassacus and his warriors, and another fight ensued, in which the Indians were repulsed. In the following month a second force under Stoughton, from Massachusetts, entered the Pequot territory, took two forts, and captured or destroyed almost all the tribe. Sassacus, the chief, fled to the Mohawks, but was there murdered, and his scalp sent to Boston.

42. The Pequot war being thus ended, Massachusetts again began its religious investigations. Mrs. Hutchinson was condemned and banished, with many of her adherents. This led to new settlements. Hutchinson and Coddington removed to Rhode Island. Wheelwright founded Exeter in New Hampshire; others settled at Portsmouth, while Davenport and Eaton, just arrived from England, proceeded to Long Island Sound, and founded New Haven, in 1638.

The settlements in New England now formed seven distinct colonies; and in May, 1643, Connecticut,

did Mason reach the town? What was the result of the battle? Where did Sassacus overtake him? Who next invaded the Pequot country? What became of Sassacus?

43. What was the result of the religious discussions in Massachusetts? What new settlements were founded? Who settled Rhode Island? New

New Haven and Plymouth, entered into a confederacy with the General Court of Massachusetts, styled "The United Colonies of New England." The object of this union was their mutual defence and protection: by its terms the general affairs of the colonies were to be managed by two commissioners from each colony, who met alternately at the different capitals.

Maine, in which some settlements had been made, and which was claimed by Gorges, was not admitted on the score of religion, and for the same reason Providence and Rhode Island were excluded, as there Roger Williams now openly avowed the doctrines of the Baptists. Anxious to protect his colony, Williams sailed to England to obtain a charter, the more necessary, as Massachusetts had just by force carried off Gorton, another dissenter, and convicted him at Boston.

43. These colonies thus united, resembled each other in all their general features. The power was in the hands of the clergy, who controlling church membership, controlled the elections, none but church members being allowed to vote. They finally, in synod, framed their own special confession of faith, and made it the law of the land. No other religion was tolerated, and in defiance of their charter and of the laws of England, they punished as heretics members of the Church of England, and as seditious persons all who even petitioned for liberty of worship.

Roger Williams had, as we have already seen, pro-

Hampshire? Portsmouth? New Haven? How many distinct colonies now existed? What was formed in 1643? Who composed this union? How was it governed? Why were Maine and Rhode Island excluded?

44. Who possessed the chief power in the colonies? Who alone were

ceeded to England, and there, principally by his zeal for the conversion of the Indians, obtained, in 1644, a charter for his colony of Providence Plantations, with which he returned, and soon restored peace to that little territory, although his intolerant neighbors still put forward their claims.

The colony of Massachusetts had, in 1638, founded Harvard College, the oldest literary institution between Quebec and Mexico, and in 1649, perfected its laws for general education. Of the Indians they made no account, and far from endeavoring to convert and civilize them, gave little encouragement to the zealous men who, like Eliot, devoted themselves to this great work. Encouraged by a more Christian feeling in their countrymen, the French missionaries had preached the gospel to the tribes as far west as Lake Superior, before those of Massachusetts heard the Saviour's name.

44. The triumph of the Parliament in England, gave the Puritans of New England full power to carry out their principles, and well satisfied with their position, they refused all the invitations which Cromwell gave them to settle in the West Indies. During this period, Massachusetts and Connecticut both adopted stringent codes of laws; and the United Colonies opened negotiations with Canada, which led, however, to no result.

allowed to vote? What were their ideas of toleration? How did Williams act to escape their encroachments? What did Massachusetts do for education? What did it do for the Indians? What contrast exists on this point?

44. What invitation did Cromwell extend to the New Englanders? What steps did Massachusetts and Plymouth take in Maine? What did

At this time the country between the Piscataqua and Kennebec was divided into two parts, Maine and Ligonia, claimed by different proprietors; but as these patentees were dead or unrepresented, Massachusetts in 1651, and the following year, seized it all and extended her code and religious system to the whole territory. Plymouth at the same time possessed a small tract east of the Kennebec, where she founded Cussinoc, now Augusta.

Not satisfied with this enlargement of her territory, Massachusetts next attempted to reduce Providence and Rhode Island, carried off many of the Baptist settlers by force, and punished them for nonconformity to the laws of Massachusetts by flogging and other tortures: the Commissioners of the United Colonies did not however countenance Massachusetts, and the Union was well nigh dissolved.

45. In 1653, however, rumors spread that the Dutch at New York were inciting the Indians to war; on this envoys were sent to ask an explanation from Stuyvesant, and these listening to various parties on Long Island, returned and advised war. The Commissioners of the colonies met, and by a vote of 6 to 2, resolved on a war against the Dutch. At this juncture, however, the general Court of Massachusetts interfered and protested against the war.

Connecticut being most exposed, applied to Crom-

they introduce? What other colonies did Massachusetts invade? What was the result?

45. What rumors were raised in 1653? What did the commissioners do? How did Massachusetts nullify the act? To whom did Cromwell then apply? What prevented hostilities? What was done by Cromwell's expedition?

well for aid, and an armament was sent, but before its arrival, peace was declared between England and Holland, and the danger ceased. The expedition, however, seized Acadia, which Cromwell subsequently granted back to De la Tour.

46. In 1656 some Quakers landed in Massachusetts; a new theological fever broke out. Laws were immediately passed, punishing by fine those who brought over any Quakers, and ordering all Quakers to be flogged, and their books burnt. Still more stringent laws were passed in the following year in Massachusetts, Plymouth, New Haven and Connecticut, and as these failed, a terrible law in 1658, punished all returning Quakers with death, and four of these poor people were actually hanged. Alarmed now themselves, the Massachusetts General Court adopted milder laws, the more necessary as the house of Stuart had been restored in England.

MARYLAND.

47. The oppressed condition of the English Catholics in the seventeenth century, has been already mentioned. No persecution recorded in history, equals that of the English government against its Catholic subjects in length of time, multiplicity of penal laws, or severity in enforcing them. The Separatists emigrated, but the Catholics, impoverished and plundered, clung with unabated attachment to the land of their ruined monasteries, and desecrated churches.

46. What excited a new theological fever in 1656? What laws were passed? What was the nature of the laws of 1658? How many Quakers were hanged? What induced a change of the laws?

47. What can you say of the persecution of the Catholics in England?

In 1624, however, George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, who had just embraced the Catholic religion, resolved to found a colony in America, where Catholics might enjoy their religion in peace.

Failing in an effort to colonize Newfoundland, and repulsed from Virginia, he solicited of the king a patent for a tract on the Potomac. The charter, drawn by Lord Baltimore himself, ranks him among the wisest and best of lawgivers. It protected the liberties of the colonists, granted them a legislature, exempted them for ever from English taxation, and established an equality of religious rights. For his colony, the laws against emigration, and the laws granting a monopoly in the fisheries, were repealed. Before this patent passed the great seal however, Lord Baltimore died, leaving his rights and his zeal to his son Cecil, to whom the charter was issued.

48. Two hundred persecuted Catholics, with two Jesuit Fathers as chaplains, sailed, under Leonard Calvert, in two small vessels, the Ark and Dove, in November 1633. After a long and stormy passage, they reached the Chesapeake in March. Having examined the ground, they landed on the 25th, the feast of the Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary, and took possession of Maryland. A cross was planted with religious ceremonies, by the pious pilgrims, and a fort raised on St. Clement's Island, after which Calvert with a missionary visited the neighboring tribes, and made an alliance with the Piscataways.

Who projected a Catholic settlement in America? What was his first choice? Why did Virginia refuse him permission to enter? What patent did he solicit? To whom was it granted?

48. When did Lord Baltimore send out settlers? Under whom? How

On the 27th of March, they proceeded to the shore, and began the foundation of the city of St. Mary's, the capital of the province. Purchasing the ground of the natives, they transformed an Indian bark hut into a chapel, and began to raise houses and sow their fields. Suddenly, however, a danger arose. Claiborne of Virginia attempted to excite an Indian war, and the settlers were compelled to desist from their labors, and build a block-house for defence. They did not, however, escape the malignity of Claiborne, who, on being foiled in this attempt, fitted out a vessel to cruise against the settlers; but his vessel was taken, and he himself compelled to fly to Virginia. Claimed as a rebel by Calvert, he was sent to England for trial. The Governor of Maryland having thus restored peace, convened an Assembly of the colonists, as by the charter legislative powers were vested in them.

49. In 1637, Kent Island, Claiborne's seat, submitted to Calvert, and a new Assembly convened in the following year, fully organized the internal government of the colony. Lord Baltimore at first claimed the right of originating all acts, but as the colonists disputed it, he finally yielded all but the veto power.

The missionaries had now established regular missions among the Piscataways and Patuxents, converting many of both tribes, among others, Chilomacon, king of the Piscataways, who was solemnly baptized

many? In what vessels? When and where did they land? With whom did they make peace? What city did they found? Who disturbed the peace of the colony? What was his second effort? What became of him? What did the governor do?

49. When did Kent Island submit? What did the assembly demand? What were the Catholic missionaries doing? What success had they?

in presence of the governor on the 5th of July, 1640. As these conquests of the missionaries extended, they surrounded the colony with a rampart of friendly, Christian Indians.

The only enemies were the Susquehannas, a powerful tribe on the river of that name, the fame of whose valor had spread to Canada. They now began to attack the Marylanders and their Indian allies, but were soon repulsed by the vigor of the governor. Soon after, some Puritans driven from Virginia were received into the colony, and in return fomented a new rebellion under Ingle and Claiborne, in 1643, during the governor's absence, relying on the success of their party in England. Governor Calvert returned in the following year, and attempted to reduce the rebels, but was defeated and put to flight. Claiborne and Ingle acting in the name of Parliament, now took the supreme control into their own hands, arrested the missionaries, and sent them in chains to England, banished those most faithful to Lord Baltimore, and reduced many others to poverty.

50. In 1646, however, Calvert raised a force in Virginia, crossed the Potomac, defeated the rebels, and restored the former liberal government. This was his last act, for he died on the 9th of June, 1647, having with the greatest self-devotion striven for fourteen years to establish a refuge for the oppressed in the western world.

How did they protect the colony? What tribe made war? Who repulsed them? Who were received into the colony? Of what ingratitude were they guilty? Who finally succeeded? What did they do?

50. What was Calvert's last act? What was his character? What

Under Governor Stone, whose administration began in 1648, was passed the celebrated act of toleration, guaranteeing to all freedom from any vexation on account of religion, and punishing the use of any contemptuous name of a sect or party.

The Puritans had, however, now greatly increased in numbers by immigration, and on the death of Charles I., Claiborne and Bennett, two commissioners sent by Parliament to reduce Virginia and Barbadoes, entered Maryland, overpowered the governor, who finally submitted, and after restoring to Claiborne all his original claim, retired to Virginia.

51. Governor Stone in 1654, restored the proprietary government, but the Puritans soon overcame him, and calling an Assembly deprived Catholics of all civil rights. In the following year, Stone, by Lord Baltimore's orders, raised a force to subdue the Puritans, but after a long and desperate engagement at Providence, in which many of his followers were killed, and himself taken prisoner, Stone was completely overthrown on the 25th of March, 1655. This victory the Puritans followed up by the cold-blooded murder of many of their prisoners.

Cromwell, however, disavowed the acts of the Puritans, and reinstated Lord Baltimore, whom the Puritans at once requested to renew his act for liberty of conscience, which they had repealed. Fendall was

celebrated act was passed in 1648? What did Claiborne and Bennett do on the death of Charles I?

51. Who attempted to restore the government? What laws were passed by Claiborne's party? In what battle was Stone entirely defeated? How did the Puritans follow up their victory? How did Cromwell act? What

now appointed governor by Lord Baltimore, but he did not finally establish order till 1658; soon after he himself rebelled, threw off the authority of Lord Baltimore, and endeavored to republicanize Maryland. Charles, however, was now king, and Philip Calvert came out as governor.

did the Puritans then beg for? Who was next appointed governor? What did he attempt?





THE ENGLISH COLONIES UNDER THE REIGN OF CHARLES II.

1. Charles II. was restored in 1660, and soon showed more attention than his predecessors to American affairs. He began a system of policy intended to establish the royal power in the colonies. During his reign New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania and Carolina were added to the number of English colonies, and all made proprietary governments. Connecticut and Rhode Island, indeed, received a charter, but Massachusetts and New Hampshire were reduced into royal provinces.

2. The accession of Charles II. alarmed the New England colonies, and they at once sent out a very submissive address: but their actions were quite at variance with their words. Although several of the regicides were notoriously in the colonies, they pretended to believe that they were in the Dutch colony on the Hudson, and called on Governor Stuyvesant

1. When was Charles II. restored? What did he attempt? What new colonies were founded in this reign? Which received charters?
2. How did New England act on Charles II.'s accession? Of what hypocrisy were they guilty? What did Charles require? What colonies

to surrender them. Charles was not, however, to be blinded by their flattery, or deceived by their cunning; he required the repeal of all laws inconsistent with those of England or with his authority, the toleration of the Church of England, and the extension of the franchise to persons who were not members of the Puritan churches.

While Massachusetts was thus resisting Charles, Winthrop of Connecticut, and Clarke of Rhode Island, secured the royal favor in England. Winthrop, a man of courtly, polished manners, obtained in April 1662, a very liberal charter for Connecticut, in which New Haven was included, and in July 1663, Clarke obtained a similar one for Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, which were now united. Both these charters gave the colonists full powers to choose their own magistrates, make laws and direct their internal affairs, unrestrained by Parliament. Indeed, these charters were so liberal, that that of Rhode Island was continued in force long after the establishment of the Republic.

3. In 1664, Charles made a grant to his brother James, Duke of York, of all the country between the rivers Pemaquid and St. Croix in the present State of Maine, and also the territory between the Connecticut and Delaware. This last portion included the Dutch colony of New Netherland, and in the account of the

acted more wisely? What did the Connecticut charter embrace? What two colonies were united in the new government of Rhode Island? What shows the liberality of their charter?

8. What grant did Charles II. make to his brother James? Who were sent out to take possession? What other duties were they charged with?

Dutch colony we have stated how the Duke took possession, and changed the name to New York.

Nichols, Carr and Cartwright, the commissioners sent out to take possession of the Duke's grant, were also empowered by the king to establish his authority, and settle disputes in New England. In pursuance of this power they arranged several questions of title, and attempted to obtain a submission from Massachusetts. They were, however, opposed and compelled to desist. In Maine they restored a proprietary government, which Massachusetts immediately set aside by force of arms.

4. While the government of Massachusetts was thus defying the power of the king, Plymouth involved all the New England colonies in an Indian war. Ponmetacon, or King Philip, head chief of the Wampanoags, after being disarmed in 1670, was accused of plotting against the state in 1675. Indignant at this, some of his tribe, according to their ideas of Indian justice, killed the Indian accuser. The Plymouth authorities then tried three of the Indians for murder, and on very slight evidence put them to death. The Wampanoags resolved to retaliate. In June, 1675, they attacked Swansey and killed several of the inhabitants, thus beginning a bloody war.

Plymouth now too late saw her error and prepared for a long struggle; a force was raised, which reinforced by some companies from Massachusetts, marched to

How did Massachusetts receive them? What did they restore in Maine? How did Massachusetts overthrow it?

4. In what did Plymouth now involve New England? What were the wrongs of Ponmetacon? What did his Indians do? When did the war

Mount Hope, but finding Philip's town deserted, compelled the Narragansetts to promise fidelity. Soon after, tidings came that Philip was encamped in a swamp at Pocasset, and this they immediately surrounded: but the Indian chief and most of his followers escaped to the Nipmucs, whom they roused to war.

5. The Nipmucs began by attacking Mendon and Brookfield, the latter of which was totally destroyed. The Connecticut River Indians next took the field, destroyed Deerfield and Northfield, besides cutting off several parties of troops sent against them. The Indians on the Merrimac, and the Abnakis or Taranteens in Maine, burst on the border settlements, ravaging, burning, and destroying. Thus injustice to the Indians involved all New England in a fearful war, during which the sky was constantly reddened by the glare of burning villages.

The colonies revived the old union. Commissioners met, and they resolved to crush the Narragansetts, who though still at peace, would, they feared, soon join Philip. In December, 1675, their combined force entered the country of the Narragansetts, and guided by an Indian deserter, advanced to a fort in the present town of Kingston. The Narragansetts were not unprepared: they poured on their assailants a deadly volley, and for two hours kept them at bay, nor were they defeated till their cabins were in flames, and two

begin, and where? Where did the New Englanders now endeavor to take Philip? What tribe did he rouse to war?

5. What towns did the Nipmucs attack? Who next joined Philip? What was their success? What other tribes now began hostilities? What had provoked this war? What did the colonies now revive? What tribe did they resolve to crush? When and where did they attack them? How

hundred and thirty-six of the New Englanders had fallen. The surviving Narragansetts thus cruelly treated after every effort at peace, now ravaged the colonies. Lancaster, Medfield, Weymouth, Warwick, Marlborough, Rehoboth and Providence were all more or less destroyed: and parties of troops were again and again cut off.

6. The war was terrible on both sides. The colonies were overrun, but the Indians, unable to plant, were perishing with hunger. Canonchet, the nephew of Miantonomoh, was taken while in search of seed corn, and shot in 1676. Philip, who had fled towards the Mohawks, now returned to his old haunts, and aided by Witamo, squaw sachem of Pocasset, and Punham of Shawomet, renewed the war. But the colonists were now successful; Punham was killed, Witamo drowned, and Philip's wife and child taken. He himself escaped with difficulty, and after skulking from haunt to haunt, was killed by one of his own men in August, 1676.

Thus ended a war of one year's duration, in which one third of the colony was destroyed; and on the other hand, two entire nations were annihilated. In this struggle the whites were as ferocious and as treacherous as their red neighbors could have been. Many Indians were killed after a promise of life, and several hundred Abnakis in Maine were treacherously

did the Narragansetts resist? How many of the English fell? What town did the Narragansetts now ravage?

6. How did the Indians fare? Where was Canonchet slain? Where was Philip? Who were his chief allies? What became of them all? What was the colonies' loss in the war? How bad the English acted? Where were they guilty of great treachery?

seized after the peace, and sold as slaves, by Wal-
droe, who at a late day made fearful atonement for his
crime.

7. Maine, west of the Kennebec, had been seized
by Massachusetts, but was now awarded by a deci-
sion of the courts of law to Gorges, who, however,
sold his rights to Massachusetts; the portion between
the Kennebec and Penobscot was part of New
York, and Governor Andross restored peace and tran-
quillity there in 1677. In 1678, the king made New
Hampshire a royal province, and restored Mason, the
old patentee, to his rights.

Massachusetts thus shorn of her territory, still re-
sisted the English laws of trade, and refused to con-
cede toleration, to extend the elective franchise, or
to issue writs in the king's name.

Charles, however, resolved to reduce the colonists
to submission, to maintain his rights as sovereign, and
to check their intolerant and tyrannical acts. Finding
them still obstinate, he ordered legal proceedings to
be begun for setting aside their violated charter; and
the courts, in spite of all efforts made by the colony to
bribe the king, finally, in 1684, pronounced the charter
void, and Massachusetts became a royal province.

8. The Duke of York, brother of Charles II., hav-
ing bought up all the claims of Lord Stirling to the
portion colonized by the Dutch, obtained on the 12th
of March, 1664, a royal charter for the territory be-

7. To whose hands did Maine now pass? To whom did he sell it? Who owned another portion? What governor restored order there? What took place in New Hampshire? What did Massachusetts still refuse to do? How did Charles act? What was the result of the proceedings?

8. On what was the title of the Duke of York based? Of what two

tween the Connecticut and the Delaware, under the name of New York, and also of another territory in Maine, between the St. Croix and Pemaquid. To take possession of his new grant, he sent out, as we have seen, four ships and five hundred soldiers under Richard Nichols, Sir George Cartwright, and Robert Carr. These, aided by Winthrop of Connecticut, sailed to New Amsterdam, and compelled Stuyvesant to surrender, September 8th, 1664. Cartwright then proceeded to Fort Orange, and Carr to the Delaware, and both reduced the remaining Dutch posts, as well as the Dutch settlers west of the Delaware.

Soon after his grant, and previous to the reduction of the Dutch, the Duke of York granted to Sir George Carteret and Lord Berkeley what is still called New Jersey, to commemorate Carteret's defence of the Isle of Jersey. The new proprietors issued plans of settlement, and invited emigrants, the first party of whom came out in 1665, under Philip Carteret, and founded Elizabethtown. Emigrants soon flocked in from New England and Long Island, and for a time the colony increased rapidly, till 1670, when domestic troubles and dissensions broke out.

This division of the colony was not known in New York, till Carteret's arrival, and caused much discontent. The commissioners had settled a boundary with Connecticut, thus reducing New York greatly in limits. The Dutch part on the west side of the Delaware was,

parts did his grant consist? Whom did he send out? When did the Dutch surrender? What part did James assign? To whom? Who was sent out as governor? Whence did settlers come? What part still remained attached to New York? What city was incorporated?

however, still a part of New York, and Newcastle was incorporated by Governor Lovelace, in 1672.

9. New York was now governed by a code called the Duke's laws, promulgated by Nichols in 1665; but when Lovelace in 1667, attempted to levy taxes by his own authority, the English on Long Island resisted. While New York and New Jersey were thus in a ferment, the Dutch, then at war with England, sent a fleet to the mouth of the Hudson in 1673, and Manning, the commander of the fort at New York during the absence of Governor Lovelace, surrendered.

The Dutch restored the old laws, erected the colony west of the Delaware into three judicatories, afterwards called counties, and were preparing to confirm the province on a new basis, when peace was made, and New York restored to England.

10. On the restoration of New York, the Duke took out a new grant, and despatched Edmund Andross as governor, in 1674. He organized Sagadahoc in Maine, restored the Duke's laws in New York, and established a settled government, although great opposition was made to the levying of taxes in the Duke's name, and frequent petitions for a legislature were made. Andross, however, continued in office till 1680.

New Jersey had, meanwhile, undergone many changes. Berkeley sold his share to Fenwick and Bil-

9. How was New York governed? Where was resistance made? What stopped all discussions? How was the country restored?

10. Whom did James send out as governor? What were his chief acts? To whom was New Jersey granted? How was it divided? What people

lings, two Quakers, the former of whom in July 1675, founded Salem on the Delaware. In the following year the colony was divided into East and West Jersey, by a line from Little Egg Harbor to the north-west corner of the state. On this division, many Quakers flocked into West Jersey.

Andross, claiming a paramount sovereignty in the Duke, attempted to extend his jurisdiction to New Jersey, and imprisoned Governor Carteret, who resisted him; the matter was finally decided against the Duke; but Sir George Carteret had become weary of his province, and sold it to a number of Quakers, of whom William Penn was the chief one. They obtained a new grant from the Duke, and appointed Barclay governor for life; but he never came out, and the colony was administered by deputy governors, one of whom, Gawin Lawrie, a Scotch Quaker, founded Perth Amboy, in 1684.

11. On the recall of Andross in 1680, Colonel Thomas Dongan, an Irishman and a Catholic, was sent out as Governor of New York, with instructions to call an Assembly, which he did, on his arrival in 1683. The Assembly met on the 17th of October, and passed a charter of liberties, which guaranteed civil and religious freedom. Dongan is remarkable as one of the ablest colonial governors ever intrusted with power in America. He was a man of enlarged views, and marked ability. He first marked out the

now flocked into Jersey? What led to troubles? To whom did Carteret sell? Who was elected governor?

11. Who was next made governor of New York? What was his first act? What may be said of this assembly? What was the character of Dongan?

great lakes as a suitable boundary for England, and sought to keep the French from all the territory south of that line, by establishing a close union with the Indian tribes.

12. William Penn, the son of a celebrated English admiral, had, as we have already seen, taken an active part in colonizing New Jersey. Having a large claim against the government for his father's services, he solicited in payment a grant in America, and obtained a charter for Pennsylvania, similar to Baltimore's, but reserving to the crown a veto, and to Parliament a right to levy duties and taxes. As Penn was a Quaker, and proposed to send out settlers of his own creed, it was also provided that the Church of England should always be tolerated.

Pennsylvania, as thus granted, comprised all between the 40th and 43d degree, and extending back five degrees of longitude from Delaware River. Besides this, he purchased of the Duke of York, Newcastle, and the counties on the Delaware, down to Henlopen, which the Duke claimed by right of conquest. In 1682, Penn sailed with a hundred emigrants, preceded and followed in that year by no less than 23 vessels. By the month of December, an Assembly convoked at Chester organized the government. German Quakers soon founded Germantown, and the new colony began to fill up with unexampled rapidity. A check, however, was given by a dispute

12. Who was William Penn? Why did he ask a grant of lands? What was the extent of Pennsylvania? What else did he purchase? When did the first settlers come? Who settled Germantown? With whom did a dispute arise?

with Lord Baltimore, as to the boundaries of their respective grants, and especially with regard to the three counties on the Delaware.

13. When Charles II. was restored in 1660, Sir William Berkeley was Governor of Virginia, and though elected by the burgesses, immediately issued writs in the name of the king, who was acknowledged without dispute; but the loyalty of the colony won no favor from the careless monarch. His partisans in Virginia secured the chief power, and made the legislature a permanent body, irresponsible to the people; while the Parliament in England passed a navigation act crippling the commerce of the colony.

In 1669, Lord Culpepper received of the king a grant of a large tract on the Potomac, and in 1673, Charles granted to him the whole colony of Virginia for 31 years. The people prepared to remonstrate and resist, while the Assembly solicited the reappointment of Berkeley as governor for life; but a new element was about to embarrass still more the affairs of the colony.

14. The Susquehannas or Andastes, conquered after a long and stubborn war by the Senecas, abandoned their ancient abodes and retreated into Maryland and Virginia. Some lawless acts, perpetrated, it would seem, by their enemies the Senecas, drew on them the suspicion of the colonies, and troops were raised to attack them. A party of Virginians and

18. Who was governor of Virginia at the restoration? How did the king act towards Virginia? To whom did he grant it? What did the people prepare to do?

19. What tribe now fled into Maryland? Of what were they accused

Marylanders, led by Colonel Washington, seized five chiefs who came to answer the charge, and put them to death.

Berkeley the governor, attempted to restrain the people, and make peace with the Susquehannas, who, too weak to renew war, were inclined to make terms; the people, however, instigated by designing men, resolved on an Indian war, and a party of 500, led by Nathaniel Bacon, marched against the Indians and ravaged their villages. He was proclaimed a rebel by Berkeley, but an insurrection compelled the governor to dissolve the old Assembly and call a new one, which met on the 5th of June, 1674, and renewed many former privileges. The elective franchise was restored in church and state, and the levying of taxes regulated. To counterbalance these proper concessions, war was, however, resolved upon, and Bacon appointed commander-in-chief. This Berkeley refused to approve, and yielded only to force, when surrounded by Bacon and his armed satellites.

15. He soon repented of his weakness, and while Bacon was hunting the unfortunate Indians like wolves, Berkeley again proclaimed him a rebel. Both parties now prepared for war; rival Assemblies were held; Jamestown, the capital, was burnt by the insurgents; but in the midst of their success, Bacon sickened and died. This was a fatal check to them: for his party.

Of what cruelty were the colonists guilty? Who attempted to save the Susquehannas? Who led the people to revolt? What did Berkeley grant? What acts were passed at the new assembly? Who resisted the bill for a war?

15. What rash step did Berkeley take? What town was burnt? What

destitute of a leader of his talents, were soon routed and dispersed. Berkeley abused his triumph by his cruelty, and in a short time no less than twenty of the insurgent leaders were condemned and executed.

In England Sir William Berkeley's course was condemned; a commission was sent out to examine his conduct, but he was so overcome by the censure, that he died soon after his arrival in London. Lord Culpepper was immediately appointed by Charles II governor for life, and arriving in 1680, called an Assembly. Here the acts of Bacon's adherents were pardoned, but most of the concessions made by Berkeley were repealed, and the colonists for 4 years were entirely at the mercy of the unprincipled and avaricious nobleman. At last in, 1684, the king cancelled his grant and resumed Virginia as a royal province.

16. A few scattered settlements had been made south of Virginia, and the proverbial riches of that territory induced the project of colonizing it. Accordingly, in 1663, Charles II. granted to Lords Clarendon, Shaftesbury, Albemarle, Craven and Berkeley, with three others, all the territory between Albemarle Sound and the St. John's, and soon after enlarged the grant so as to reach to $36^{\circ} 33'$ of North latitude.

In this territory there was a small settlement of Virginians near Albemarle Sound, and another of New Englanders on Cape Fear River. These were joined

alone checked the insurgents? What was Berkeley's conduct now? How was his course viewed in England? Who was the next governor? What was his course? When did Charles resume the colony?

16 To whom did Charles grant Carolina? With what limits? What

in 1666, by a colony from Barbadoes, under Sir John Yeamans, who was also appointed governor, and founded the lumber trade of the country.

William Sayle, the first proprietary governor sent out in 1670, founded old Charleston, which ten years after was removed to its present site, and rapidly increased.

These settlements were to be governed by a charter drawn up by John Locke, an English philosopher, but the people revolted, and for a considerable time elected their own rulers, without any regard to the rights or claims of the proprietors.

small settlement existed? Who joined them? Who was sent out by the proprietors? What town did he found? What form of government was prepared? What form did they seek to adopt?





CHAPTER VI.

THE ENGLISH COLONIES UNDER JAMES II., WILLIAM III. AND ANNE.

JAMES II., 1685-1688.

1. The death of Charles II. in 1685, raised James Duke of York to the throne, under the title of James II. He found his American colonies more in his power than any previous king had done, all being either royal provinces or held by proprietaries under royal charters. His reign was too short to accomplish any of his designs, but he evidently intended to blend the various and conflicting elements into one harmonious whole, under a single viceroy.

James first sent out Dudley as governor, to Massachusetts, and when he had established the royal authority there, and Connecticut and Rhode Island had thrown themselves on his mercy, he appointed Sir Edmund Andross governor of all New England. The new governor arrived with two companies of soldiers in 1686, and at last overthrew the system of religious tyranny which had been coeval with the settlement of New England.

1. How did James find the American colonies? What was his intention with regard to them? Whom did he appoint governor of New England? What did Andross effect?

2. New York, meanwhile, under the active and vigilant Dongan, was rapidly advancing in prosperity. That able governor, having resolved to secure the country south of the great lakes, sought to keep off the French traders, and to transfer the Indian missions from French to English priests. These attempts led to angry disputes with the Governor of Canada, who, in spite of Dongan's remonstrance, invaded New York and attacked the Senecas. Dongan stimulated the Indians to war, but on the complaint of the French king was ordered to desist, and was at last removed in 1688.

The proprietors of New Jersey were accused of violating the acts of trade, and writs of quo warranto issued against them, upon which they yielded. New York and New Jersey were then also added to Andross's rule. Lord Baltimore in a similar manner had his Maryland charter attacked, but in the colonies themselves no important events occurred.

WILLIAM III., 1688-1702.

3. While the colonies at the north were thus in a ferment, news suddenly arrived of the invasion of England by William of Orange, and of the flight of James. The people at Boston rose, and Andross, retiring to a fort, surrendered after a short struggle, in April, 1689. The New England colonies on this all resumed their former governments, and elected their own chief magistrates, joyfully proclaiming William and Mary.

2. What was Dongan in New York projecting? How did Dongan act with regard to the Iroquois? What was the consequence? Why were proceedings instituted against New Jersey? What other charter was revoked?

3. What news now arrived? What was done at Boston? What did

In New York, Nicholson, the lieutenant-governor, with his council, favored the revolution; but Leisler, a militia captain, on the pretext of a popish plot, seized the fort and the public money, and being created by his partisans temporary governor, refused to acknowledge the authority of Nicholson. On this the lieutenant-governor returned to England, and the council under Bayard refusing to submit to Leisler, retired to Albany, in June 1689.

In Maryland an adventurer of the name of Coode, just convicted of blasphemy, raised the cry of a popish plot, and forming a Protestant association, overthrew the government, deposed Lord Baltimore, and in August assumed the direction of affairs.

Pennsylvania was meanwhile disturbed by a collision between Penn and the colonists, which resulted in 1690, in the separation of the three counties on the Delaware. Setting up a separate government under Markham, they were at last acknowledged by Penn, and have ever since continued independent of Pennsylvania.

4. The English government had now changed, but though the colonies were safe from royal attempts, they were left exposed to the tyranny of Parliament, far more grasping and to be dreaded than any doubtful exercise of mere regal authority. This tyranny dates from what is styled the Revolution in England, and continued till it called forth the American Revolution.

The accession of William, however, led to a war

New England resume? How did Leisler act at New York? Who played a similar part in Maryland? What troubles were going on in Pennsylvania? In what did they result?

4. What new tyranny succeeded? How long did it last? To what

with France, and in this the American colonies became involved. France, anxious to avoid the horrors of an Indian war, had offered neutrality in America; but this was rejected, and New England and New York were eager for a struggle, in hopes of reducing Canada.

5. The Iroquois or Five Nations in New York, had already been supported by Dongan against the French, and were now stimulated and incited by both the Leisler and Bayard parties, who divided the colony. Nearly three months after Leisler had assumed the command, and on the 25th of August, 1689, a body of 1,500 Iroquois fell at midnight on the village of Lachine, in the island of Montreal, set fire to the town and massacred two hundred of the inhabitants, wreaking their cruelty on women and children.

After destroying Lachine, this Indian force ravaged much of the island, defeating the troops sent against them, and spreading terror on every side. Fort Frontenac on Lake Ontario, where Kingston now stands, was abandoned and blown up. At this moment, however, Frontenac was again sent out as governor, with instructions to invade New York, and punish it for its constant aid to the Iroquois.

6. About the same time the Abnakis, and other Indians of Maine who had been long burning for vengeance on the English, took the field. In June they captured York and massacred Waldron, who, after king Philip's war, had treacherously seized 200 of

id William's accession lead? Why did New England and New York favor war?

5. What Indians had they excited to war? What massacre did the Iroquois perpetrate? What fort did the French abandon?

6. What Indians took up the hatchet for the French? What caused

their tribe to sell as slaves. In August the Penobscots invested Fort Pemquid, and after a siege of a few days compelled the garrison to capitulate. They then ravaged all the recent English settlements, and returned in triumph to their towns.

As war had now begun in earnest, both sides made preparations for invasion. Frontenac, whose design was to seize Albany, and descend the river to New York, sent out a war party of French and Indians against Schenectady, which was taken by surprise at night in February 1690, and utterly destroyed. Sixty of the inhabitants were killed, and 27 carried off as prisoners.

Another French and Indian party destroyed Salmon Falls in New Hampshire, and a third forced Casco to surrender.

7. The English colonies were now filled with alarm and bitterly regretted the rejection of the offered neutrality. Influenced by religious hatred, they had hoped to crush the Canadians, and they now began to tremble for their own liberties. They were not, however, daunted: after passing penal laws against the Catholics, they resolved to act vigorously. Leisler had already called an Assembly in New York, and prepared to attack Canada; but as Albany and the Indians refused to acknowledge him, nothing had been done.

In April, 1690, however, delegates from all the

Waldron's death? What fort was taken? What projects were now formed by the English and French? What was the first stroke? When was Schenectady taken? How many were killed? What did another French party take?

7. What were passed in the colonies? What was Leisler doing? When

English colonies met at New York by Leisler's request, and drew up a plan for the complete conquest of Canada. A land army was to penetrate from Albany to Montreal, while a fleet from Boston was to invest Quebec. In pursuance of this plan, an army of Connecticut and New York troops, under Winthrop, advanced to Wood Creek and encamped. Here supplies failed them, sickness broke out, and although Schuyler with some Indians made a bold incursion into Laprairie, the whole expedition failed.

8. Sir William Phipps, who commanded the fleet, took Port Royal and most of the posts in Acadia, and entering the St. Lawrence, appeared before Quebec. Frontenac had put Montreal in a state of defence, and now assured of its safety, returned a haughty answer to the summons of the New England admiral. Phipps landed some troops and attacked the town; but the militia, under the aged Juchereau, repulsed the first column at Beauport, with the loss of 150 men. Phipps then cannonaded the town, but after suffering greatly from the French artillery, and failing in another attack on land, he resolved to raise the siege, and after negotiating an exchange of prisoners, in October, 1690, sailed down the river with his shattered vessels and disheartened troops. The French exulted at this victory which had saved Canada: the king had a medal struck, and the people of Quebec raised a church to Our Lady of Victory.

did the convention meet? What plan was adopted? How did the expedition end? What did Schuyler do?

8. What did Phipps effect? What answer did Frontenac return to his summons? Where did Phipps land, and with what success? What did Phipps next attempt? When did he finally raise the siege? How did the

The failure of the expedition caused a cessation of hostilities, except in the east, where the French recovered Port Royal, and by their Indian allies kept the English frontier in a state of siege.

9. The English colonies were now occupied by internal affairs. Sloughter, appointed Governor of New York, arrived in March 1691, and because Leisler had not surrendered the fort to Captain Ingoldsby, who had first arrived and demanded it in his name, he had him arrested for high treason. He was tried, found guilty, and executed with his son-in-law, in May 1691. Thus perished one who had by fanaticism seized the supreme power, and crushed all who dared to dispute his authority.

In 1692, Sir William Phipps was sent out to Boston as governor, with a new charter, which included in Massachusetts, Plymouth, Maine and Sagadahoc. This charter modified in a considerable degree the former policy of the colony, and especially granted religious toleration to all but Roman Catholics. It was accepted without difficulty, and Massachusetts, which had hoped greater freedom under William, still remained a royal province, deprived of its former privileges.

10. During the war a general panic about witchcraft had spread over New England, and many were now accused and brought to trial. As it arose at Salem, in 1692, in the house of the minister there, it is

French celebrate their victory? What did the French recover after this?

9. Who now became governor of New York? Of what was Leisler accused? What became of him? What new charter was issued in 1692? What was included in Massachusetts? What modifications did it make?

generally called the Salem witchcraft. Every accident or disease was now attributed to this, and accusation was speedily followed by condemnation, as the loosest testimony was taken, and in many cases the accused were forced by torture to confess themselves guilty.

When, however, the pretended sufferers began to accuse persons of great respectability, and especially after the execution of the Rev. Mr. Burroughs, the people began to be alarmed. Twenty had been executed, fifty-five more were under sentence, and at least a hundred and fifty in prison. Regarding all this as a series of judicial murders, the people petitioned against any further trials, and the mania generally subsided.

11. During the rest of King William's war, no important operation took place on the part of the English, although the French still vigorously carried it on by their war-parties, which destroyed Oyster River, Pemquid and Haverhill in New England, and the Mohawk villages in New York. Besides this, Frontenac, the Viceroy of Canada, led an army in person to Onondaga, and after ravaging the country of that tribe, and of the Oneidas, forced the Iroquois to send ambassadors to Canada. At last the peace of Ryswick, in 1697, put an end to the war.

The southern colonies were free from attack; but were destined to find that their rejoicings over the

10. What mania now arose? Where? How were convictions obtained? What clergyman's death closed the excitement? How many perished?

11. What further operations did the French undertake? What expedition did Frontenac lead in person? What peace closed all hostilities?

accession of William were delusive. That monarch, more arbitrary than his predecessor, deprived Penn of his province because he was a Quaker, and Lord Baltimore of his, because he was a Papist, and in both cases without even the form of a legal process.

Copley, the royal governor of Maryland, called an Assembly in 1692, repealed all existing laws, enacted a new code, disfranchised Catholics, established the Church of England, and taxed all for its support, thus completely overthrowing the edifice of toleration and equal rights erected by the Catholics.

12. Virginia was committed successively to Nicholson and Andross, both of whom were thus rewarded by William for their services to James in the north. Nicholson founded William and Mary's college in 1691, and passed a code of laws relating to slaves and their condition. Andross, who came out in 1691, first collected the colonial records, and established a post-office, a royal patent for which had been granted to Thomas Neale.

During the reign of William, the Carolinas, after being torn by civil dissensions gradually took a settled form, and under the administration of the just and mild Archdale, South Carolina rapidly increased; fortunately too, Spain having been an ally of England in the war, no hostilities took place on the frontier.

On the peace of Ryswick, England, burdened with debt, resolved to enforce the acts of trade, and

What two proprietors did William deprive of their colonies? Why? How did Copley act in Maryland?

12. Who were successively governors of Virginia? What did Nicholson do? What were the important acts of Andross? What was the state of Carolina? What act did England now strive to enforce? What board

derive some aid from the colonies. To superintend them, a board called the Lords of Trade was created in 1699, and new acts of Parliament passed confining colonial trade to England, excluding all foreign countries, among which Ireland and Scotland were included.

The state of the colonies under William may be briefly stated. He established the royal power firmly, introduced the Admiralty Courts, enforced the acts of trade, endowed the Established Church of England, and involved the northern colonies in a bloody and expensive war.

13. While the English were thus extending their colonies to the south, the French of Canada were descending the Mississippi. In 1699, Iberville, a gallant Canadian of the family Lemoyne, sailed with two frigates and two tenders for the mouth of the Mississippi, having on board two hundred colonists. After ascending the river for a short distance, he began a settlement in May, at Biloxi, in the present state of Mississippi, and here erected a fort.

The colony, however, did not prosper, and after a year or two was removed, in 1702, to Mobile and to Dauphin Island at the mouth of the Bay. At the same time missionaries from Canada took up their residence among the tribes on the river Mississippi, and although some were killed by the Indians, zealously continued their labors for the conversion and civilization of the Indians.

was created? What new acts were passed? What was the result of William's reign in the colonies?

18. Where were the French extending? Who founded Louisiana? Where did he first settle? Where was it subsequently removed? What steps were taken to convert the Indians?

ANNE, 1702-1714.

14. Almost immediately on her accession, Anne, involved in the war of the Spanish succession, was compelled to cope with both France and Spain.

The American colonies, now completely encircled by the French and Spaniards, looked with alarm to the coming war. New York by the influence of Schuyler, obtained a neutrality with Canada, but New England had to struggle with the French, and Carolina with the Spaniards.

Immediately on the proclamation of war, Governor Moore of Carolina sailed to attack St. Augustine, and soon took the city, in September, 1702, but while assailing the fort was surprised by two men of war which entered the harbor; in order to escape, he abandoned his vessels and stores, and retreated by land to Charleston, leaving his colony overburdened with debt. In the following year, however, he more successfully attacked the Spanish missions on the Appalachicola, and killing several of the missionaries, and hundreds of their civilized converts, carried off an immense number as slaves.

The Spaniards attempted to retaliate by an attack on Charleston, in 1706, but failed, and hostilities gradually ceased.

15. In New England a party of colonists, forgetting the late war, attacked and plundered the young-

14. In what war was Anne involved? What did New York obtain? What colonies were concerned in the war? What did Moore attempt? What more successful expedition did he carry on? How did the Spaniards retaliate?

15. How did New England excite an Indian war? Who took Deer-

er Castine, thus rousing all the eastern Indians to war. After several minor attacks, a party of 350 Canadians and Indians under Hertel de Rouville attacked Deerfield in March, 1704, and after burning the village and killing nearly fifty of the inhabitants, hurried off a hundred as prisoners. To retaliate, Church with some troops was sent against the French on the Penobscot, but no important blow was struck. This was followed up in 1707, by an expedition against Port Royal, which twice failed to take that place, but gratified its desire of revenge by ravaging all the farms of the French settlers.

The Canadians were not idle: in 1708, de Rouville again dashed into the heart of New England, burned Haverhill, carrying off many prisoners, and killing some fifty of the inhabitants. Roused now by these bold attacks, Massachusetts called for aid. Vetch, a Boston merchant, proposed to attack Canada by sea, and by a land army from New York. Troops assembled at Albany from New York, New Jersey and Connecticut; but as the vessels did not arrive from England the whole expedition failed.

16. In July, 1710, Vetch and Nicholson, with a fleet of twenty transports, sailed to Port Royal, and, taking it, treated the people with such want of humanity, that they were soon themselves besieged in their new quarters. In the month of June, 1711, an English fleet arrived at Boston under Sir Hoveden

field? What was Church's expedition? What did they attempt next? What was Rouville's next exploit? What old plan was renewed? With what success?

16. Who sailed to Port Royal? How did they treat the people? What

Walker, to carry out the old plan of conquest. Again Nicholson assembled at Albany the troops of Connecticut, New Jersey and New York, with many of the Iroquois, who thus gave up their neutrality; but again was the project destined to fail. The English fleet was wrecked in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, eight transports were dashed to pieces, and nearly a thousand persons perished. On this the land army retired, and the project again failed.

While the northern colonies were thus drained of men and means, the Tuscaroras made war on North Carolina, devastating the settlements, and sweeping all before them, till January, 1712; when, attacked by provincials and Indians from South Carolina, they asked for peace; but, as the English soon violated its provisions, war was renewed, and the Tuscaroras, finally defeated and thinned down, emigrated to New York, and joined the Iroquois cantons. The peace of Utrecht in 1713 closed the inter-colonial war, and yielded Nova Scotia to England: but the Yamassees in South Carolina, who had just been useful allies against the Tuscaroras, now began a bloody war, and were reduced by Governor Craven only by vexations and expenditure.

arrived in 1711? What became of the fleet? What did the army do? What Indians made war in the south? To what part did the Tuscaroras retire? What treaty closed the war? What did it gain for England? What new Indian war began? Who brought it to a close?



CHAPTER VII.

REIGNS OF GEORGE I., GEORGE II., AND GEORGE III.

GEORGE I., 1714-1760.

1. The treaty of Utrecht left Maine, Nova Scotia and New York, in the hands of England; but the French immediately founded Natchez, in 1716, New Orleans in 1718, fortified Louisburg, on Cape Breton, in 1720, and raised a fort at Niagara in 1721; while their old allies and converts, the Abnakis, in Maine, where the zealous missionaries of Canada still labored, vexed at the constant encroachment and injustice of the English settlers, showed signs of hostility. Massachusetts, in spite of the efforts of Governor Shute to obtain justice for these Indians, resolved on war, and, attributing all the discontent to Father Sebastian Rale, the Jesuit missionary at Norridgewalk, twice sent expeditions to cut him off; and at last, after burning the town in August, 1724, succeeded in butchering him near his little chapel. The Indians, however, carried on the war with vigor,

1. What did the treaty of Utrecht leave in the hands of England? What new posts did the French raise in the ensuing years? What tribe showed signs of hostility? How did Massachusetts act? Whom did they attempt to cut off? How did the Indians succeed? When did they offer peace?

burned Brunswick, plundered the fisheries, and ravaged all the frontiers, until Fort Dummer, now Brattleboro, was erected to check them. In 1725 the Indians offered peace, which New England gladly accepted, having lost immensely by the war, and obtained no striking advantage.

2. Most of the colonies were involved in disputes with their governors, chiefly arising from the refusal of the Assembly to fix a permanent salary; but no change was made except in Maryland. The proprietor had for 25 years been deprived of the administration of his province, for the sole reason that he was a Catholic; but his pliant son, having in 1715 abjured the Catholic religion, was rewarded for his apostasy by the restoration of his rights; but had just time to take possession when he died.

In 1719, the disputes between the proprietaries and the colonists came to such a point, that the Assembly of South Carolina renounced all dependence on the proprietaries, and declared themselves a royal province. North Carolina remained subject to the proprietaries, and, under a separate Assembly, passed its first laws, thus preparing for a division of Carolina into two colonies.

GEORGE II., 1727-1760.

3. Florida remained in the same state, having made little or no progress: but the French had rapidly pushed on their colonization on the Lower Mississippi.

2. What troubles were taking place in the colonies? Why had the proprietor of Maryland been deprived of his colony? How did his son obtain it? What did the people of South Carolina do? How did North Carolina prepare for a division?

Indian wars, however, checked them, and left a wide territory between them and the English colonies.

In 1729, the Natchez, roused by the tyranny of Chopart, the French commandant, massacred all the settlers at the neighboring town, and began a furious war, in which they sought to draw the other Indian tribes. The Yazoo, although they had just danced the calumet at New Orleans, massacred their missionary and the French settlers, the Chickasaws sent out their war parties, and the whole colony was menaced with ruin. Perier, the governor, took the field with his allies the Choctaws, and totally defeated and dispersed the Natchez. Many were killed, many taken prisoners and sold; the remnant fled to the Chickasaws.

The Mississippi Company, who had attempted the colonization on a gigantic scale, but had failed, after creating the most extraordinary speculations in France, now resigned the country to the king, and the Canadian Bienville, just appointed governor, resolved, in 1735, to punish the Chickasaws; in order to crush them he ordered the commandant of Illinois, D'Artaguette, to attack them from the north while he assailed them in the south; but he himself advanced in vain. D'Artaguette and Vincennes attacked, and took several forts, but abandoned by the Indians, were defeated, and with several of their force taken, and as soon as Bienville retired, burnt at the stake.

At the north the French pushed into Lake Cham-

8. What was the position of Florida? What checked Louisiana? What Indian war broke out in 1729? What massacre took place? Who joined the Natchez? What was the result of the war? What company ruled Louisiana? What war did Bienville begin? What was the result? What post and mission were founded in the the north?

plain, and in 1731, erected a fort at Crown Point, destined to be the scene of many a bloody battle in ensuing wars; and soon after one of their zealous missionaries founded a station at Ogdensburgh, to which he drew many of the Six Nations.

4. A new English colony now rose in the south. The enthusiast Oglethorpe, planning a colony for Protestant refugees, and insolvent debtors, obtained a grant of the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha, which was vested in a body of twenty-one Trustees, and took the name of Georgia. A liberal charter was drawn up, granting lands and religious toleration to all settlers except Roman Catholics; and in 1733, Oglethorpe arrived at Charleston with 135 emigrants, who immediately proceeded to Yamacraw bluff and founded Savannah.

The liberal conditions of the new colony drew settlers from many parts. Some Jews were sent out by merchants of that faith in London. German Protestants from Salzburg founded Ebenezer, Scotch Highlanders settled New Inverness; other villages arose, and a strong fort called Frederica was built by Oglethorpe on St. Simon's Island.

5. This new colony was at once involved in war with Spain, into which England had foolishly rushed. Oglethorpe found the Carolinas eager for war, and in 1739, with the forces of Georgia and South Carolina, invaded Florida and took Fort Picolata: reinforced

4. What new English colony arose in the south? Who planned it, and for whom? Who were excluded? When did Oglethorpe come out? What city did he found? Who swelled the colony? What new towns arose?

5. With whom was the colony at once involved? Who commenced

by troops from North Carolina, and by a body of Creeks, he advanced to St. Augustine, and laid siege to it. The Spanish garrison under Governor Monteano was large, and the town well fortified, and Monteano having in a sortie nearly cut to pieces his best troops, Oglethorpe, after being deserted by his Indians and by the Carolina troops, retired to Savannah.

The English colonies from New England to Georgia were now called upon to aid Admiral Vernon's expedition against Cartagena, and many Americans perished in that ill-fated expedition. On its failure the Spaniards took courage, and Monteano having fitted out an armament of 3,000 men at Havana to ravage Carolina, sailed to the coast. Here he wasted his time in ignorance of the proper point, and after attempting to take the strong place, Frederica, where he was checked in a skirmish and deceived by a spy of Oglethorpe's, sailed off without effecting anything.

6. During some years the northern colonies had enjoyed great peace, and had rapidly progressed in wealth and population. Religion again became a public matter. From this epoch dates the system of revivals and periodical religious excitement introduced by Whitefield, the associate of Wesley. New York in 1741, had also been the scene of a singular delusion. Some fires, apparently accidental, led to the belief in a plot of the negro slaves to burn the city and massacre the people; many were arrested and

operations, and how? What was the result? For what expedition were the colonies now called on to contribute? What did Monteano do on its failure?

6. Who produced a religious excitement? What delusion took place

tried, and as the frenzy increased, new features were added to the plot. At last a letter of Ogl thorpe's gave rise to a belief that it had been fomented by a Jesuit or priest in disguise. As there was at the time no Catholic priest in the colony, a poor non-juring schoolmaster suspected of being one, was tried, condemned and executed. The delusion did not end till many white persons were hanged, and a great number of slaves burnt at the stake.

7. The war in Europe now became general. France sided with Spain, and the northern colonies prepared for war. The French were, however, the first in the field in America. In May 1744, under Duvivier, they took Fort Canseau in Nova Scotia, and besieged Annapolis, then called Port Royal. New England was alarmed; Governor Shirley of Massachusetts resolved to attack Louisburg on Cape Breton, the stronghold of the French. Massachusetts and the other New England colonies soon raised their quotas of men; New York, New Jersey and Pennsylvania sent their contingent in money, stores and ammunition. The expedition, headed by a chaplain bearing an axe to demolish the crucifixes in the churches, set sail under Colonel William Pepperell, and late in April, 1745, began the siege of Louisburg. The French commandant after a gallant defence, in which he cut off a hundred and fifty of the assailants, finding that a vessel containing his reinforcements and supplies

in New York? What gave it a religious turn? Who fell a victim to the popular prejudice?

7. What change now took place in the war in Europe? Who first took the field in America? What were their operations? What expedition was planned by Shirley? How was it headed? When did it sail, and

had been taken, surrendered on the 16th of June, after a siege of seven weeks.

The French in Canada were not idle; an expedition from Crown Point took Fort Hoosic, in August 1745, and another ravaged Saratoga, spreading terror to the lower counties on the Hudson. This led to another attempt against Canada, but as had so often happened, the army dispersed before reaching the first French post; and a French fleet hovering off New England, spread terror there till it was dispersed by a storm. This ended the military operations of the war, which terminated by the peace of Aix-la Chapelle, October 8th, 1748. By the provisions of this treaty, Louisburg was restored to France, and the St. Mary's made the boundary between Georgia and Florida.

8. The interval of peace which followed was differently employed by the French and English. The latter widened still more the discontent between the colonists and the mother country, and by continuing the cruel oppressive laws against Catholicity, drove the Catholics of Maryland to form a plan of emigrating to the French colony of Louisiana. The French did not accept the Maryland Catholics, but restored their posts on the Mississippi, and to connect these with Canada, erected in 1753, Fort Presqu'isle, at the site of the present town of Erie, and Fort Le Boeuf

under whose command? What resistance did the French make? Why did they surrender? When? What French expeditions retrieved this? What did the English colonies attempt? What alarmed them in turn? What closed the war? What was restored? What boundary fixed upon?

8. How did the English government act towards the colonies? What did the Maryland Catholics attempt? What new forts were raised by the

and Fort Venango on the Alleghany, thus entirely commanding the valley of the Ohio, which they claimed by right of discovery.

The English had, in 1749, formed the "Ohio Company," to colonize the eastern bank of the Ohio River, with a monopoly of the Indian trade. This led to a collision; the French seized an English trading fort at Piqua, and carried off the English traders. This aroused a strong feeling in Virginia, and Dinwiddie, the governor, proceeded to the Alleghany to hold a treaty with the Indians, and obtain their consent to the erection of an English fort at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela, a point then supposed to be in Virginia.

9. The adverse claims of England and France to this territory were based on different grounds; and neither seemed to regard actual occupancy as of much importance. France maintained that the party taking possession of the mouth of a river became owner of the whole valley watered by it; and claimed the whole valley of the Mississippi, which it had in part colonized. England put forward her various charters, and also asserted that any spot to which their Indian allies had successfully penetrated by their war parties was conquered territory, and set up a claim to Canada itself; it was accordingly evident that another war would ensue.

After planning his fort, Dinwiddie resolved to

French? What English company had been formed? What resulted from these adverse claims? What did the French do at Piqua? What did Dinwiddie resolve to do?

9. What theory did the French set up? What did they claim under it? What did the English put forward? What did Dinwiddie do after

send to the nearest French post, and demand their reasons for erecting forts on English territory. For this purpose he chose George Washington, a native of Virginia, a young surveyor, already full of promise. Proceeding in 1753, to Fort Le Boeuf, he was cordially received by St. Pierre, the French commander, who, soldier-like, referred him to the Governor of Canada for explanations, and agreed to transmit Dinwiddie's letter.

10 Dinwiddie was meanwhile battling with his Assembly for a grant of money to raise his fort; and when he at last succeeded, heard, to his chagrin, that the French had driven away the few soldiers whom he had sent to the spot, and had commenced a fort, which they named Fort Duquesne, in honor of the Governor of Canada. At this time, however, Colonel Fry was advancing slowly with a Virginia regiment, and on hearing of the conduct of the French, sent his Lieut. Colonel Washington in advance. On the 28th of May, 1754, the latter fell in with a French party under Jumonville, and attacking them, killed the commander and ten others. Thus was blood first shed, and war enkindled.

Falling back, Washington threw up a small fort, to which he gave the name of Necessity, and as Colonel Fry had died, he assumed the command of the whole regiment, and awaited the arrival of troops from

planning his fort? Who was his envoy? What was the result of Washington's mission?

10. What prevented Dinwiddie from pursuing his plan? How did the French anticipate him? What fort did they raise? What English commander was on his way to the spot? Whom did he send on? What occurred on the 28th of May, 1754? What did Washington do after the

10*

New York and Carolina, whom Dinwiddie had obtained. Reinforced by these, he advanced on Fort Duquesne; but hearing of the approach of a large French force under De Villiers, he fell back to Fort Necessity, and closely invested here, agreed to a capitulation after one day's fighting. On the 4th of July, he and his troops marched out, and left the valley of the Ohio to France.

11. Dinwiddie had urged a united action of the colonies, and to effect this, a convention met at Albany to negotiate a peace with the Iroquois or Six Nations, and then to draw up a plan for a general union. On the 4th of July a plan proposed by Dr. Franklin was adopted; but having been rejected by the colonial Assemblies and disapproved by the king, it never took effect.

Early in 1755, General Braddock arrived from Great Britain with two English regiments, and the title of commander-in-chief. Calling a convention of the colonial governors, he resolved to attack Fort Duquesne in person, while two other expeditions against Niagara and Crown Point were to be undertaken at New York. Prior to these, an expedition from New England set out against the Acadians. In June, 1755, Colonel Monckton suddenly attacked three little French forts in the Bay of Fundy, and after carrying these, resolved to execute a plan of infamy devised in

skirmish? What did he await? What was his next step? What was the result of his expedition?

11. What now met at Albany? Who proposed a plan of union? What became of his proposition? Who arrived in 1755 with troops? What did he call? What three expeditions did he undertake? What New England expedition first set out? What was its success? What act of

New England, and sanctioned by every pretext of law which bigotry could invent. Nova Scotia contained many French settlers called Neutrals, who had remained under the British rule after the last war; these were now suddenly seized to the number of 15,000, deprived of lands, flocks, and all other property, hurried on board the fleet, and carried off. They were then landed in parties in various colonies, from Massachusetts to Carolina, without any regard to family ties, thrown on public charity as paupers, and in some colonies were not even permitted to have the services of a clergyman. The descendants of these victims of persecution are one of the elements of the Catholic population in the United States.

12. This crime was soon punished. Braddock was at this time advancing with a force of 2,000 men on Fort Duquesne; and as from the difficulties of the road his progress was slow, he at last left his heavy baggage under Colonel Dunbar, and pushed forwards towards Fort Duquesne, until he arrived within nine or ten miles of it. His approach had alarmed the French; their Indian allies refused to take the field, and it was only by the utmost eloquence and exhortation that Beaujeu induced a party under the Huron chief Anastase, to set out with him and a few Frenchmen, in order to ambuscade the English. It was too late: before he could reach the spot which his practised eye had selected for an ambuscade, he came upon

infamy did they then perpetrate? Who were the neutral French? What was now done with them?

12. How far did Braddock advance? What was the position of the French? Who finally led out a party? What was his intention? What was his only alternative? How did the British van receive his charge?

the van of Braddock's army. Although his whole force consisted of but 200 Frenchmen and 600 Indians, Beaujeu resolved to fight, and from amid the bushes opened a sudden fire on the advancing English. The van fell back, and in vain attempted to form; Braddock came up and endeavored to restore confidence, but was at last mortally wounded. The provincial troops accustomed to Indian fighting, alone held their ground, and under Washington saved the remnant of the English troops. In this fatal battle the English lost their general, most of their officers, and 700 men; while the French mourned only the loss of 30, among them, however, the gallant Beaujeu.

13. The expedition under Shirley, which was intended to act against Niagara, never left Oswego, in consequence of various delays. The expedition against Crown Point led to greater results. General William Johnson was the commander; but before he left Albany, General Lyman of Connecticut erected Fort Edward on the Hudson, which Johnson reached in August. Taking command of the troops, he advanced to the southern shore of Lake George.

The French government had sent out Baron Dieskau as commander-in-chief, with 4,000 regulars, to carry on the war with vigor. With the flower of his force Dieskau proceeded to Crown Point, and finding no signs of the English, resolved to attack Fort Ed-

Who rallied the troops? What was the result? Who maintained his ground and protected the retreat? What was the English loss? the French loss?

13. What did the Niagara expedition effect? Who commanded that against Crown Point? What fort did they erect? How far did they advance? Who headed the French forces? Against what fort did he

ward. Misled by his guides he lost so much time that by the request of his Indians, he turned towards Johnson's camp. The English general hearing of his approach, sent out a thousand *Provincials* under Williams, and 200 *Mohawks* under Hendrick; but Dieskau perceiving their approach prepared an ambuscade and cut the detachment to pieces, Williams and Hendrick being both among the dead. Johnson now began to form a breastwork of trees, and posting his cannon to advantage, awaited the assault of Dieskau; the French general soon appeared, and led up his grenadiers to the attack, but being badly supported by his *Provincials* and Indians, was driven back, and at last on a sortie directed by Lyman, who in consequence of a wound of Johnson's, took command, was badly wounded and saw his troops give way in disorder. The battle of Lake George resulted in a loss of about 300 on each side, Dieskau remaining a prisoner, and his army retreating to Crown Point. Johnson claimed the merit of this victory, and erected Fort William Henry on the site of his camp; but as he had effected nothing he made no advance on Crown Point, and at last in December returned to Albany. His fame was at its height, and the government, forgetting Lyman, rewarded him with a baronetcy.

14. A convention of governors met at Albany, in 1756, and again advised the three expeditions against the dangerous French; but while awaiting for the arrival of Lord Loudon, the new commander-in-chief

advance? What induced him to change his plan? What became of an English detachment sent out? What was the result of Dieskau's attack on the fort? What did Johnson do after the battle?

allowed the season to pass without effecting any thing. Montcalm, the new French commander-in-chief, was more active; while the English commanders were talking at Albany, he led an army of Regulars, Canadians and Indians, and composed in part of the Irish brigade, to Oswego, and in a few days took the two English forts with all the garrison, ammunition and supplies. Mercer, the commander, having fallen early in the siege, Littlehale, his successor, surrendered with 1,400 men, a large amount of military stores, and over 100 pieces of artillery. Montcalm then, to please the Onondagas, demolished the forts, and planting a cross retired.

15. In 1757, Lord Loudon resolved to attack Louisburg, and sailed with a considerable force to besiege it, but hearing that a large French fleet was off the coast, he returned to New York. There he heard of new disasters. In August, the ever active Montcalm finding no hostile expedition set on foot by the English, advanced against Fort William Henry with 9,000 men. For six days Colonel Munro, the English commander, held out in hopes of relief from Fort Edward, but finding that none would be sent, capitulated on the 9th of August, on honorable terms. The Indians in the French service did not relish this, and as the English were marching out burst upon them and massacred many, in spite of the efforts of the French.

14. What did the English do in 1756? What fort did Montcalm take? How many English surrendered here?

15. What did Loudon attempt in 1757? What fort did Montcalm take in 1757? How long did Munro hold out? When did he surrender? (if what were the Indians guilty?)

officers, who endeavored in vain to restrain the savages. Montcalm razed the fort, and having thus demolished two of the English frontier posts, retired.

16. The result of these two campaigns led to a change of ministry in England, and to new attempts in America to retrieve the English name, and with varied success. In May, Admiral Boscawen sailed to Louisburg with a land army under General Amherst. A siege was begun in form, and as the English batteries soon destroyed the shipping and made breaches in the walls, the French commander accordingly, on the 26th of July, capitulated.

To compensate for this loss the French were again victorious on Lake Champlain. On the 6th of July General Abercrombie landed with 15,000 men, and a heavy train of artillery, near Ticonderoga, and advanced on the fort. Montcalm sent out a party which suddenly attacked the English centre, killing their commander, Lord Howe, and forcing all to retire to the landing-place. On the 8th, Abercrombie again led them to attack the bristling fort of the French, but after wasting the blood of his brave men in vain attempts to storm it, he drew off with a loss of 2,000 killed or wounded.

17. To redeem this loss Colonel Bradstreet led a small English force against Fort Frontenac, now called Kingston. Landing in August near the fort, he began an unexpected attack, and on the 27th the

16. Who sailed against Louisburg? Who commanded the English troops? When did the French surrender? Who attacked Ticonderoga? How did Montcalm resist? What did Abercrombie then attempt? What was his loss?

17. What expedition did Bradstreet undertake? With what result?

French surrendered with nine vessels, 60 cannon, and all the supplies for the western forts.

A force of 9,000 men under General Forbes, left Philadelphia in July, to invest Fort Duquesne. On his way, his men under Major Grant were repulsed with the loss of 300 men, and he himself was on the point of retreating, when the French finding their fort untenable, evacuated it on the 24th of November, 1758, and retired. Forbes then advanced, and planting the English flag, began to erect Fort Pitt.

18. Mr. Pitt, the English minister, now planned a decisive campaign against Canada. An expedition under General Wolfe was to sail up the St. Lawrence and attack Quebec. General Amherst, the commander-in-chief, was to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and advance on Montreal, while General Prideaux was to invest Niagara. Against these formidable attacks, the French could make but little opposition; almost abandoned by the home government, Montcalm had neither men, money nor supplies.

In June a fleet of nearly fifty vessels, under Admiral Saunders, conducted General Wolfe from Louisburg to Isle Orleans, a few miles below Quebec. Montcalm commanded the city in person, and lay with part of his forces south of the city in a fortified camp. Wolfe after cannonading the town without effect, attacked the camp on the 21st of July, but was repulsed

What expedition did Forbes lead? What repulse did he experience? Why did the French retire? What did Forbes begin?

18. What plan did Pitt now adopt? In what position were the French? Where did Wolfe land? When did he attack the French, and with what success?

with the loss of nearly 500 men. Mortified at this failure, he was about to renew the attack, but yielded to his council, who advised him to gain the heights above Quebec.

19. While Montcalm was fortifying his camp, Wolfe embarked, and passing the city landed, and in the night reached the heights of Abraham. Montcalm, thunderstruck at this step, resolved to hazard an open battle, and on the 13th of September, 1759, advanced to meet Wolfe. The Canadians and French began the battle, but the English reserved their fire till the main body of the French came up, when their terrible volleys, and a headlong charge, broke the French line. Wolfe and Montcalm, opposed to each other on the French left, were both mortally wounded; but the English under Townshend pressed on, and the French, after losing 500 killed and 1,000 prisoners, dispersed in confusion. Wolfe, conveyed in a dying state to the rear, heard the shouts of victory, "They run!" and learning that the French were in full flight, exclaimed "I die content," and expired.

Montcalm died soon after in the hospital of Quebec, consoled only by the thought that he did not live to see the flag of England floating over its walls.

20. Scarcely had this decisive battle been fought, when De Bougainville appeared at the head of the French reserve; but finding Montcalm dying and his army dispersed, he collected the remnants of his force

19. What step did Wolfe then take? What did Montcalm then do? On what day? Describe the battle? What were Wolfe's dying words?

20. Who now appeared? What did he do on learning the fate of the day? When did Quebec surrender? On what terms? What befell

and retired up the river. Quebec thus left to her fate, and destitute of provisions, surrendered on the 18th. By the terms of the capitulation, the religion and property of the inhabitants were guaranteed, and the soldiers were to be sent to France.

General **Prideaux** had in July appeared before Niagara and begun the siege, but being accidentally killed, left Sir **Wiliam Johnson** in command. On the 24th of July, a force of 1,200 French and Indians under **Aubry**, attempted to relieve the fort, but attacked by **Johnson** in front, and in flank by the English Indians, they gave way and were routed, many perishing by the hand of the Indians in the woods. Fort Niagara, thus deprived of all hope, surrendered the next day.

Amherst had in July with a force of 11,000 men landed before Ticonderoga. **Bourlamaqui**, the French commander, fell back to Crown Point, and then to Isle Aux Noix, conscious that no reinforcement could reach him, and that he was alone unable to cope with **Amherst's** force. Satisfied with this, **Amherst** sent a detachment to destroy the Indian town of St. Francis, and returned to Crown Point.

21. In the spring of 1760, **De Levi**, the successor of **Montcalm**, attempted to retake Quebec, and drawing **Murray** out of the city defeated him at Sillery, killing or capturing 1,000 men and all his artillery. **Murray** fled into the city, and **De Levi**, flushed with success, be-

Prideaux at Niagara? Who succeeded him? What French general attacked him, and when? With what result? What became of Niagara? What advance did Amherst make? What did Bourlamaqui do? What was Amherst's only exploit?

21. What did **De Levi** attempt in 1760? What was the result of the

gan the siege, but was compelled in May to raise it by the appearance of an English fleet.

Amherst had meanwhile descended from Oswego to Montreal, and had, on the 8th of September, 1760, received the surrender of Canada from Vaudreuil, the last French governor.

22. The war being thus ended in the north, the English commander turned his attention to the south. Some acts of depredation had led to a general war with the Cherokees, and an expedition into their territory under Colonel Montgomery had only served to exasperate them, and on his withdrawal they besieged Fort Loudon, which capitulated on the 7th of August, 1760. In the following year Colonel Grant led another expedition against them, and after ravaging their country, forced them to sue for peace.

At the close of this war England became involved with Spain, and a British force occupied Havana in the Island of Cuba. All parties, however, now longed for peace; and on the 10th of February, 1763, a definitive treaty was signed at Paris, by which France surrendered Canada, and all her territory east of the Mississippi, except the island of New Orleans. Spain by another treaty surrendered Florida to England, in exchange for Havana, and by a third she received from France, Louisiana, and all the French territory west

battle of Sillery? What saved Murray? What did Amherst do meanwhile?

22. What war now broke out in the south? What success had the Indians? Who compelled them to sue for peace? With what other country did England become involved? What city did the English take? When was peace made? What did France cede to England? to Spain? What did Spain cede to England?

of the Mississippi. Thus ended, in 1763, the French domination in North America.

GEORGE III., 1760—1774.

23. Just before the close of the late war, George III. had succeeded his grand-father on the throne, and by the treaty of Paris found himself ruler of half of North America, of all the eastern portion from the Gulf of Mexico to Hudson's Bay, with no competitor on that continent except the king of Spain.

This vast territory, comprising colonies so recently at war with each other, would have needed time and prudence to coalesce into a perfect whole; but there existed seeds of difficulty which soon rent it again into fragments.

24. The Indian tribes in the valley of the great lakes had beheld with regret the fall of the French power, ever more friendly and fatherly to them than that of the English: and when British garrisons occupied the posts in the west, the Indians showed them no welcome. Seeing their destruction at hand, the Senecas urged the Delawares and Shawnees to a general war. The Miamis, Wyandots, Illinois, Ottawas and Pottawatomies joined the league, and Pontiac, the Ottawa chief, became the master spirit.

Resolving to begin the war, Pontiac on the 9th of May, 1763, laid siege to Detroit with a large force of confederate Indians; on the 16th a party of Hurons and Ottawas entered Fort Sandusky, and putting the

98 Who became king just before the close of the war? What were his American territories? What existed in these colonies?

garrison and traders to the sword, carried off the commander; on the 25th, St. Josephs near Lake Michigan was similarly taken. Almost at the same time Fort Pitt was invested, Forts Miami and Ouiatenon taken. In June two parties of Indians assembled to play ball near Fort Mackinaw, and in a short time threw the ball near the fort. Unheeded by the soldiers, they rushed up and seizing the officers who stood there entered the fort, and killing seventeen took the rest prisoners. Fort Presqu'isle soon fell, Fort Le Bœuf was taken, although the garrison escaped, but not one survived at Venango. The posts being thus swept away, the whole frontier was ravaged by destroying bands.

25. Amherst, learning of these terrible checks, despatched aid to Gladwyn, the commander at Detroit; but Dalyell, the officer who led it, insisted on a sally, and was killed with most of his command in the battle of the Bloody Run, on the 31st of July. Bouquet was also sent to relieve Fort Pitt with two Highland regiments: on the 5th of August he was attacked by the Indians at Edgehill; but after a desperate fight, in which his ability alone saved him, succeeded in surrounding and utterly routing them. His loss was 115 in killed and wounded, one fourth of his force, but his victory was complete.

The Senecas now took the field covertly, and cut

24. How did the western Indians view the triumph of England? Who urged a general war? Who joined the league? Who became the leader? What was his first step? What forts were surprised the same month? How was Mackinaw taken in July? What other posts fell?

25. What steps did Amherst take? What was the battle of Bloody Run? of Edgehill? Who intervened and arrested the war?

off a convoy of provisions near Niagara. A furious war seemed inevitable, when the French officers in Illinois intervened, and by their letters, messages, and belts, induced the Indians to stop all hostilities, and Pontiac in November raised the siege of Detroit, and soon after entered into a general peace.

26. Canada was now to be formed into a separate government; and the British Government, either influenced by the Indian war or by policy, allowed the French entire religious freedom, and their ancient laws. They had never enjoyed a colonial assembly, and none was now given. This conduct of the government exasperated the old colonies, who had entered on the war in hopes of destroying Catholicity in the north, and now they so firmly believed that the king sought to make Canada an instrument in depriving them of their cherished liberties, that Burke warned the administration that they perilled all their American possessions.

While the English colonies were thus discontented, Louisiana, which had passed into the hands of Spain, resisted the first governor sent out, and under De la Freniere, the attorney-general, sought to establish a republic similar to that of Switzerland. In 1769, however, O'Reilly, a new Spanish governor, appeared with a large force, arrested the republican leaders, and executing several at a hasty court-martial, suppressed the first republican efforts in America.

27. The English colonies, provoked at the course pursued towards Canada, and stimulated by the ex-

26. What steps were taken for the government of Canada? What was granted to the French? How did the older colonies like this? To whom

ample of Louisiana, became involved in disputes with the home government. During the last war, the colonies had lost 30,000 men, and incurred a debt of \$16,000,000. England, which had carried on the war in almost every quarter of the globe, was so overwhelmed with debt that the ministry sought some mode of deriving a revenue from the colonies. Parliament had on several occasions exercised jurisdiction over the colonies, and passed, in 1765, an act requiring all instruments in writing, and all newspapers used in the colonies to be on stamped paper, which varied in price according to the value of the property in the transaction. The news of the passage of the act was received in the colonies with indignation; they had protested against it in vain, and now set it at defiance. Mobs destroyed the stamps and forced the stamp officers to resign.

The colonial Assemblies protested against it; in Virginia Patrick Henry offered a resolution, declaring that the Assembly had the exclusive right of taxing the people, and asserting that the people were not bound to obey any law imposing a tax, unless made by their own representatives. In a violent debate, in which Henry exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—" he was stopped by a cry of "Treason!" but he added simply,—"may profit by their example." Alarmed at his boldness, the Assembly ventured to pass his reso-

had Louisiana passed? How did the colonists bear the change? What did they attempt? Who crushed the first republican effort?

27. What had the English colonies lost in men and money? How did Parliament attempt to draw more from them? What was the stamp act? How was it received? What was done in the Virginia Legislature? What

lutions Massachusetts had similarly protested against the act, and mindful of the old confederacy called for a meeting of delegates from the several colonies at New York in October. Accordingly on the 7th of October, 1765, twenty-eight delegates from nine colonies attended. Electing as their President, Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, they passed a Declaration of Rights and a statement of their grievances, and drew up a petition to the King and memorials to Parliament.

28. When the day arrived on which the act took effect, every thing was check'd; the law courts closed, marriages ceased, no man could sell land, or ship goods. Stamp paper, however, was not to be procured, for it had been destroyed, or was concealed. As a necessary consequence, the law became a nullity, and unstamped paper was used as before.

Alarmed at this conduct, Parliament, in 1766, repealed the obnoxious act, to the great joy of the Americans, who testified it by erecting statues in many places to the king and Lord Chatham.

Although the Parliament had yielded, it reserved the right to tax the colonies; and in 1769 passed a new bill, laying a duty on tea and some other articles, and suspended the legislature of New York, till it would pass an act to furnish the king's troops with supplies. This excited a new opposition in America; the country teemed with political pamphlets, and Massachusetts issued her famous Circular, calling on the col-

were Henry's remarks? How did Massachusetts act? What did it call? Where did this Congress meet, and when? Who was chosen president?

28. What was the effect of the act? What rendered it null? What did Parliament do? What new bill was passed by Parliament?

onies to band together in order to obtain a relief of their grievances. Called upon by the British Government to rescind the resolution adopting the Circular, the legislature refused, and was dissolved. A sloop belonging to John Hancock, a leading patriot, was next seized in Boston, on a charge of smuggling; but the excitement of the people was so great, that the custom-house officers fled to vessels lying in the harbor.

29. General Gage, in order to prevent similar scenes, summoned some troops from Halifax. The people, alarmed at this, required the governor to call an Assembly, and on his refusal a convention assembled. But this the governor denounced as treasonable. The troops soon arrived, and landed at Boston, to the number of 700, on the 1st of October, 1768; and as the selectmen refused to assign them quarters, were placed in the state-house.

The acts of Massachusetts were regarded in England as rebellious, and Parliament not only approved the use of force, but advised that offenders should be sent over to England for trial. The colonial Assemblies, however, were not intimidated, and in Virginia, North Carolina, and Massachusetts, were dissolved by the governors.

In March, 1770, the troops in Boston, who had been constantly insulted by the rabble, fired on the

What legislature was suspended? What did Massachusetts issue? How did Parliament retaliate? What followed the seizure of Hancock's vessel?

29. What did General Gage now do? When did the troops land? Where were they quartered? What were Parliament's next acts? What took place in March, 1770? What did the people compel Gage to do? What was the result of the trials?

mob, and killed three. The city immediately rose in arms, and compelled the government to remove the troops. The soldiers were arraigned and tried for murder, but being defended by John Adams and Josiah Quincy, two eminent patriots, were acquitted.

30. While Boston was thus in a state of excitement, Parliament repealed all duties except one on tea, and by a subsequent act, authorized the East India Company to export tea to America, without paying duty in England. The Americans, however, would not accept this. They refused to receive the tea; and the vessels which came to New York and Philadelphia were compelled to return. At Charleston they were permitted to land, but all sales were prohibited. At Boston, Governor Hutchinson attempted to induce the people to submit, but while the controversy was going on, a party, disguised as Indians, rushed on board of the ship, and emptied the chests of tea into the harbor (Dec. 16, 1773). In punishment for this act, Parliament closed the port of Boston, revoked the charter of Massachusetts, and ordered all murder trials of officers acting under authority to be held in England, or in such colony as the governor chose. Besides these acts directly aimed at New England, the celebrated Quebec Act established the French law and the Catholic religion in Canada, Illinois, and the Northwest.

31. The old colonies were now alarmed. The last General Court of Massachusetts named deputies

30. How did Parliament proceed? What did the Americans do? What was done at New York, Philadelphia, Charleston? What at Boston? How was Boston punished? What was the Quebec act?

31. When did a Continental Congress meet? How many delegates

for a continental Congress, which met at Philadelphia on the 5th of September, 1774. Twelve colonies were here represented by fifty-three delegates. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was elected President, and Charles Thompson, Secretary. The colonies here resolved to sustain Massachusetts. In a declaration of colonial rights, they claimed legislative independence, and the privilege of levying their own taxes, protested against standing armies, and denounced as passed in derogation of their rights, eleven acts of the actual reign, beginning with the Sugar Act, and ending with the Quebec Act. It was also agreed to suspend all further intercourse with Great Britain until redress was obtained.

Gage, now Governor of Massachusetts, began to realize his position. He fortified Boston Neck, and seizing the ammunition and stores in Cambridge and Charlestown, prepared to stand a siege. The colonists of Massachusetts prepared for war, by calling a Provincial Congress, organizing an army of 12,000 men, and enlisting one fourth of the militia as minute men. Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia, also called Provincial Congresses, and these bodies considered as the real Assemblies, were the only government henceforward recognized by the people; and although for some time longer they professed allegiance to the King and Parliament, this may be considered the close of the reign of George III. in the colonies. The Revolution had begun.

were present? Who were chosen President and Secretary? What resolutions were passed? What did Gage do? What stores did he seize? How did Massachusetts prepare for war? What other colonies called Provincial Congresses? In whom did the supreme power now rest? What may this be considered as the close of?



CHAPTER VIII.

THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

1774-1788.

1. General Gage at Boston, still eager to crush opposition, secretly sent out a detachment under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, on the night of the 18th of April, to seize some military stores at Concord, a town sixteen miles from Boston. In spite of his precautions the news spread, the country took the alarm, and before sunrise a party of militia collected on the green in front of Lexington church, under Captain Parker. Major Pitcairn, riding up at the head of the British troops, bade them disperse, and on their refusal, ordered his men to fire. Eight of the minute men were killed, and the rest dispersed.

The English then advanced and destroyed the stores, but the militia soon assembled in force, and advancing on a bridge occupied by the English, soon drove them from it in confusion. Colonel Smith now began a rapid retreat, pursued and harassed by the Americans, who would have taken all, had they not

1. What step did Gage take? What did the militia do? How did Major Pitcairn act? What did the English effect? Describe the subsequent events. What saved the English? What was the English loss? the American?

found at Lexington a reinforcement of 900 men under Lord Percy. That officer received the fugitives in a hollow square, and continued the retreat in good order to Boston. In this expedition the English lost in killed, wounded and prisoners, nearly three hundred, the Americans eighty-five.

2. The whole country was now in arms, and as news came of the fight at Lexington, the militia hastened in, and Gage soon found himself besieged by a large but irregular army of resolute men. The provincial Congress assumed the direction of affairs, organized the army, and provided for its supplies, and for fortifying the most important posts. In this position Gage anxiously awaited the arrival of reinforcements, in order to attack the Americans, and open a communication with the interior.

As soon as the first blow was struck, several colonies saw the importance of taking the English posts on Lake Champlain, and thus cutting off all intercourse with Canada. In May, Connecticut and Vermont volunteers under Colonels Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold surprised Ticonderoga, taking the commander in bed, and almost at the same time Colonel Warner took Crown Point. Some recruits on their way to the American force also surprised the English garrison at Whitehall. Arnold, thus successful, sailed down the lake to St John's, which he took, but on the approach of a large English force, retired to Crown

2. How did Gage soon find himself? Who assumed the direction of affairs? What did Gage look for? What project did the Americans now entertain? Who commanded the forces? What was the result of the expedition? How was this victory important?

Point. This signal campaign gave the Americans the key of Canada, and prevented the English forces from co-operating with each other.

3. In June, Gage, now reinforced by several regiments under Howe, Clinton and Burgoyne, resolved to take the field. He issued a proclamation, offering pardon to all who would return to their allegiance, except John Hancock and Samuel Adams. The Americans were not, however, inattentive; their army, under Major-generals Whitcombe and Warren, was now organized, and on the evening of the 16th of June, Colonel Prescott was sent to occupy Bunker Hill; by some mistake he proceeded to Breed's Hill, nearer Boston, and intrenched himself there.

Gage perceiving the importance of this bold step, ordered the vessels in the harbor to cannonade the American works, and sent General Howe with 3,000 regulars to storm them. Crossing over in boats, Howe led his men up the hill in two solid columns, without a shot being fired on either side. When the British got within ten rods of the works, the Americans poured in on them so deadly a volley, that the English troops fell back in disorder with severe loss. Howe rallied his troops, and setting fire to Charlestown, again advanced, but was again repulsed with loss.

Gage now despatched General Clinton with fresh troops, and Howe advancing a third time reached the

3. When did Gage receive reinforcements, and what? What proclamation did he issue? What had the Americans done meanwhile? What did they do on the 16th of June? What did Gage do on seeing them on Breed's Hill? Who led up the English? Describe the battle of Bunker

American works, and planting some cannon at an unfinished part, raked them. The American main body, who had expended their ammunition, now drew off; Stark, on the left, having repulsed the British light infantry, and prevented an attack in flank. The British were left in possession of the hill, but durst not pursue the Americans, for their loss in killed and wounded amounted to 1,000. The American loss did not exceed 450, but among the fallen was Major-general Warren, one of the ablest patriots of the colony.

4. Before this battle had been fought, the Continental Congress at Philadelphia had, on the 10th of May, issued addresses to the king, to the people of Great Britain, and to the people of Canada. Defining their position and intentions, they prepared for war, and completed the work of the Provincial Congresses, by organizing the army. George Washington was appointed commander-in-chief; Ward, Lee, Putnam and Schuyler, major-generals. Washington was present as a member of the Congress, from the State of Virginia: he thanked them for the honor conferred upon him, and declaring that he would take nothing beyond his expenses, at once prepared to assume the high and difficult post. Gathering the volunteers who joined him from Maryland, Virginia and Pennsylvania, Washington proceeded to the camp before Boston; and on the 12th of June, fixing his head-quarters at Cambridge, posted the right wing at Roxbury, under General Ward, and

Hill. Whom did Gage then send? What was the result of the battle? What was the British loss? What the American? What General fell?

4. What had Congress issued? What did they organize? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? Who major-generals? How did Wash-

the left, at Prospect Hill, under General Lee. During the rest of the year, the siege continued, the American forces gradually increasing in numbers and discipline. In February, 1776, as Congress pressed for decisive action, Washington proposed an assault, but yielded to the advice of his officers, and resolved to fortify Dorchester Heights, and so command the city. During a severe cannonade on the city, a detachment of American troops occupied the heights on the 4th of March. Howe, now in command of the English forces, attempted to assail this point, but was prevented by a storm, and doubtless aware, from the battle of Bunker Hill, how difficult it would be to oust the Americans, resolved to leave the city. By a tacit agreement, both parties suspended fire; and on the 17th, Howe quietly evacuated Boston, and sailed to Halifax, while Washington immediately entered the city.

5. Congress had in 1775, organized a second army in New York, made up in part of the troops of that province. This army was placed under the command of Schuyler, and directed to advance into Canada. In September, 1775, Schuyler attacked St. John's, but from the insubordination of his troops, had to fall back to Isle Aux Noix. Leaving General Montgomery in command, he returned to Ticonderoga to hasten up the reinforcements, but being seized with a severe illness, could not rejoin the army.

Montgomery again besieged St. John's, and having

ington act? To what place did he at once proceed? When did he join the army? How did he dispose it? What did he propose in February? What heights did he occupy? What did Howe attempt? What followed?

5. What other army had Congress in the field? What did Schuyler

carried Fort Chamblly, obtained what he most needed, ammunition and artillery. St. John's, unable to hold out, surrendered on the 3d. of November, and Montgomery garrisoning the post hastened to Montreal which capitulated on the 13th. He now proceeded with the residue of his force, only three hundred men, down the St. Lawrence towards Quebec, to meet another American army sent from Boston. This army, one thousand strong, had under General Arnold penetrated by the Kennebec and Chaudiere Rivers to the St. Lawrence, after enduring the greatest hardships and famine. Unable to take Quebec, he retired to Pointe Aux Trembles to await Montgomery. The latter arrived on the 1st of December, and with the united forces, amounting to 900 men, they laid siege to Quebec. Failing to produce any effect on the works, Montgomery resolved to storm the town, and on the 31st of December, during a heavy fall of snow, advanced to the assault in four columns: two to make feigned attacks on the Upper Town, and two under himself and Arnold to attack the Lower Town on different sides. Montgomery advanced by way of Cape Diamond, carried the first intrenchment, but at the second was met by a volley which killed him and several of his officers. On his fall his division retreated. Arnold had entered the town, but being severely wounded, was succeeded by Morgan, who,

attack in September, 1775? With what resu't? What forts did Montgomery take? When did Montreal capitulate? What direction did he then take? What other army was marching to join him? Where did Arnold retire? When did the armies unite? When did they assat the city? Describe the battle. Who was killed? Who wounded?

after a desperate struggle of several hours, finding himself surrounded, laid down his arms.

6. Arnold, on the death of the gallant Montgomery, drew off the remnant of his force, and awaited reinforcements; more came, sufficient to enable him to renew the attack, but in May, General Thomas, the new American general, retreated hastily before Carleton, now greatly elated by reinforcements from England. At the Sorel River, sickness swept away most of the effective men, and when Carroll and Franklin, the Commissioners of Congress, failed to induce the Canadians to join the American cause, the American commander losing all hope, fell back gradually, and at last on the 18th of June, entirely evacuated Canada.

7. The Southern colonies had generally espoused the cause of Congress; Martin, royal Governor of North Carolina attempted, indeed, to quell all opposition, but his troops under McDonald and McLeod were totally defeated at Moore's Creekbridge, near Wilmington, in February, 1776, nine hundred being taken prisoners. In May, Sir Henry Clinton with part of the army from Boston, and Sir Peter Parker with new regiments from England, appeared before Charleston. The city had been fortified, and a fort of palmetto logs erected on Sullivan Island. This was attacked by the English commander on the 28th of June; but his troops could not reach the fort, three of his vessels

6. Who then successively took command? When did Thomas retreat? What thinned his army? How did the Canadians receive the American envoys? When did the Americans quit Canada?

7. What did Martin in North Carolina attempt? Where were his troops repulsed? With what loss? Who attacked Charleston, and with what force? Who defeated him, and with what loss?

stranded, and the rest after losing 200 men, while cannonading the fort, drew off, leaving Colonel Moultrie in his little fort, completely victorious, his loss being only 10 killed and 22 wounded.

8. The Continental Congress finding that all their appeals to the king and people of England had proved ineffectual, and that immense preparations were making to crush the colonies, resolved to assert their independence. Hitherto they had merely required redress of their grievances, and the exercise of their rights as British subjects. In May, 1776, Congress advised the colonies to adopt such governments as might best conduce to the happiness and safety of the people; and accordingly the several colonies, led by New Hampshire, adopted Constitutions and organized State Legislatures, similar to those enjoyed before the troubles, but making the governor and council elective.

On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a resolution declaring that "The United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown; and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." A warm debate ensued, for many leading patriots were too deeply attached to the former government to approve of this irrevocable step; but the resolution was

8. What did Congress resolve to do? What had they hitherto required? What advice did Congress give the colonies? What state took the lead? What resolution did Lee introduce, and when? Who were appointed a committee?

adopted, and a committee, consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman and Robert R. Livingston, appointed to draw up a declaration of independence.

9 The question was resumed on the 1st of July, and after much discussion the Declaration was adopted by a slight majority on the 4th; but once known, it was universally approved by the several states, and signed in August by all the delegates. From this day, the new era in American history, are dated all official papers of the government, and the anniversary is celebrated as the great national holiday.

This Declaration of the Independence begins by asserting the equality of men, and the objects of government, and the danger of altering any established form. It then enumerates the acts of the King and Parliament of England, which had been passed in violation of their rights, and their useless protests against them; and appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of their intentions, the signers, in the name and by the authority of the good people of the colonies, declare that the United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states, absolved of all allegiance to the British crown. This declaration was engrossed and signed by the President, John Hancock, and fifty-five other members, all of whom pledged to its support, their lives, fortunes, and honor.

10. Howe, on retiring to Halifax, had resolved to

9. When was the question resumed? When was the Declaration of Independence adopted? What was its tenor? By whom was it signed? What did they pledge?

attack New York, and sent Clinton there, but on his failure to surprise that city, ordered him to Charleston, as we have seen, to be repulsed from the wooden walls of Fort Moultrie. Howe now resolved to proceed in person against New York, to which city Washington had marched from Boston with his army. On the 2d of July the British commander took possession of Staten Island, and a few days after was joined by the discomfited Clinton, and by his brother, Admiral Howe, bringing fresh troops from Europe. His whole force now amounted to 24,000 men. Washington, with all his exertions, had at his disposal about 27,000, many of whom were sick and unfit for service, others unprovided with arms, and all undisciplined: so that his effective troops did not exceed 17,000. These lay partly in New York city, but chiefly on Long Island, where a fortified camp protected them, commanded by General Putnam, who had, unfortunately, too recently arrived to know his ground.

11. On the 22d of August, 1776, General Howe crossed over to Long Island, and landing near New Utrecht, prepared to advance on the American camp. As he could approach by three roads, General Putnam divided his forces to prevent his passing a range of hills which separated the armies, but the Long Island militia failed to guard his left, and General Clinton with the British right gained the heights

10. Where was Howe? What city did he resolve to attack? Who had also marched there? When and where did the British commander land? Who joined him and when? To what did his force amount? What was Washington's force? What part were effective men? Where did they lie? Who commanded on Long Island?

11. What did Howe do on the 22d of August, and where? By how

unperceived, on the night of the 26th, and in the morning descended to the plain. At the same time General Stirling on the American right had advanced on the Gowanus road to some distance from the camp to engage the British left, and soon met them. General Sullivan meanwhile joined the American centre with a single regiment, and engaged De Heister, the Hessian general, commanding the British centre. While thus occupied, he was, to his astonishment, suddenly attacked in the rear by Clinton; and his troops after standing for some time the double fire, gave way, leaving Sullivan and most of his men prisoners. Stirling, too, was now cut off from the camp, and but for the gallantry of his Maryland regiment, would have been routed; as it was, he too was taken, though most of his men regained the camp. In this irregular and unfortunate battle, the Americans, who had 5,000 in the field, lost several hundred killed, and over a thousand taken prisoners. The English loss was only 400.

12. Howe, instead of advancing at once, now prepared to attack the intrenched camp in form, but Washington resolved to withdraw to New York, and unobserved by Howe, drew off his whole force by night to New York, and that city being untenable, retired up the island and encamped at Harlaem heights. The British following him, took post at

many roads could he approach the Americans? How did Putnam divide his force? Who should have guarded his left? What did Clinton do at the head of the British right? Who commanded the American right? What did he do? Who commanded the British centre? Who engaged them? What surprised Sullivan? What was the result? What became of Stirling's division? What was the American loss? What the British?

12. What error did Howe make? What did Washington do? Where

Bloomingdale, but although some skirmishes took place, they did not attack the American camp. Washington, however, ordering Putnam to leave New York and join him, fell back to Whiteplains, where, on the 28th of October, his troops were again repulsed. Even then, Howe did not come to a general engagement, but gave up the pursuit, and Washington retreating up the river crossed over to Jersey.

The retreat of Washington, left Fort Washington on New York Island in a precarious state. It was occupied by Magaw and Shea's regiments; but before the works were completed it was attacked by four English columns from as many points; Colonel Magaw made a stubborn resistance, but was at last compelled to yield, when all his ammunition was exhausted. In this assault the British lost nearly a thousand men, but the loss of the fort with its garrison of 2,000 men and all their artillery, was a severe blow to the American cause.

13. Disheartened by these reverses, Washington abandoned Fort Lee on the west bank of the Hudson, and retreated across New Jersey, followed by Howe, who immediately posted large detachments at Trenton, Pennington, Bordentown and Burlington, and smaller bodies at towns in the rear.

Washington who had been joined by General

did he encamp? Where did the English take post? What ensued? Whom did Washington then call in? To what place did he fall back? What took place there? What was the result? What did Howe do? What fort was left on New York Island? Who occupied it? How was it attacked? What defence did Magaw make? When did he surrender? What was the British loss? What the American loss?

18. What fort was then abandoned? In what direction did Washington

Sullivan at the head of Lee's command, now conceived the project of surprising one of the British posts. On the 25th of December, General Cadwallader, sent to attack Burlington, was unable to cross. Washington early on the following morning effected a passage, and advancing on Trenton in two divisions, surrounded and captured the Hessian garrison, after a slight resistance in which Colonel Rahl, their commander, and some 30 or 40 were killed. The news of this victory spread and revived the hopes of the Americans, so that Washington, who had immediately crossed over again with his prisoners, soon beheld his army increase in numbers and spirit.

14. Howe, roused from his winter's repose by this unexpected intelligence, recalled Cornwallis, who was just returning to England, believing the war at an end. Calling in his troops he assembled a large force at Princeton, resolved now at last to bring Washington to a general engagement, and annihilate his whole army. In pursuance of this plan, Cornwallis was detached to attack Washington at Trenton and some skirmishing took place on the 2d of January. At night, however, Washington abandoned his camp, and by a circuitous route, hastened to attack Princeton. Near that town he met two English regiments: General Mercer attacked the first and dispersed it, but being

retreat? What did Howe do, and where did he post detachments? What project did Washington conceive? What did Cadwallader effect? What did Washington effect? What was the British loss? What effect did this victory produce?

14. What did Howe do on hearing of this? Where did he ~~send~~ ^{raise} a large force? Whom did he send to attack Washington? How did Washington act? What did he meet near Princeton? What was the result?

mortally wounded, the British rallied and marched on: their second regiment gave way, and retreated to New Brunswick; the third in the town made some resistance, but was soon forced to surrender. In this engagement the English lost 400 in killed, wounded and prisoners. Washington's loss was much less, but he was not allowed to enjoy the fruits of his victory: Cornwallis had again overtaken him, and he in turn retreated to Morristown.

15. From this post, where he was busily engaged in reorganizing his army, Washington co-operated with the militia of New Jersey, who now in various parts attacked the English outposts. On the 20th of January a party of militia under Governor Dickinson, defeated a detachment of the English at Somerset Court-House with great loss. By these and similar triumphs, the British were gradually driven from their positions, and before the close of the winter were confined to New Brunswick and Amboy. Such was the unexpected result of the campaign which established the fame of Washington as a consummate general.

16. On the rupture in America, Lee, the agent of the colonies in London, had opened negotiations with the French government, through the minister in London, and so far succeeded that the French Government furnished a large supply of ammunition, arms,

of the attack? What regiment escaped? What was the British loss? Where did Washington retreat, and why?

15. In what was Washington occupied? What was the battle of Somerset-Court House? To what posts were the English finally confined? What did this campaign establish?

16. Who was the American agent in London? What did he open? What did the French Government furnish? In what manner was the

and military equipments. To cover this up, however, the affair was carried on by a writer named Beaumarchais, who pretended to sell them as a private individual. Although he defrauded both governments, the arms and supplies actually sent, were a most seasonable relief to the Americans.

After the Declaration of Independence, Franklin, Deane and Lee, were sent to Paris, but could not immediately obtain open aid. France continued to aid indirectly, allowing the Americans supplies of money, arms, and provisions. Deane, instructed to engage French officers by liberal promises of high rank, induced many to sail to America, where they at first caused some embarrassment. The most celebrated of all was the young Marquis de Lafayette, who fitted out a vessel and came over in the early part of 1777. Although promised the grade of Major-General, he took merely the title, acting as aid-de-camp to Washington. Among the other eminent foreign officers were De Kalb, Kosciusko, Pulaski, and Du Portail.

17. In the spring of 1777, Washington and Howe still endeavored to out-general each other. The English from New York made an inroad into Connecticut and destroyed Danbury, but were overtaken by the militia under General Wooster, and Arnold, who volunteered to lead them. In the engagement that ensued, the English lost 300 men; the Americans,

concealed? How did he act? What were sent, and with what result? Who had been sent to Paris? What did they obtain? What instructions had Deane? How did he act? Who was the chief officer? What other eminent officers came?

17. What did Howe and Washington endeavor to do in 1777? What predatory excursion did the English attempt? What was the result of the

however, had to mourn the loss of the gallant veteran, Wooster. In revenge for this, the Americans under Colonel Meigs destroyed all the British stores at Sag Harbor.

In April, the American General, Lincoln, nearly surprised by Cornwallis, saved himself only by a rapid retreat, in which he lost 20 men and much of his baggage; but in June Washington again took the field, and advancing to Middlebrook, encamped in a very strong position. To draw him from it, Howe suddenly retreated to Amboy, and as soon as Washington descended to the plain in pursuit of him, turned, and Washington, with some loss, was compelled to regain his position. Having thus failed in his attempt to bring Washington to a general engagement, Howe withdrew in June to Staten Island, and stationing a garrison there, embarked, leaving Washington in doubt as to his destination and views. Not long after his departure, General Sullivan on the 22d of August made an incursion into Staten Island and captured part of the garrison, but on his return lost part of his own rear-guard.

18. The English were in possession of Canada, and of the city of New York. Between them lay the American General Schuyler and the Northern army. In June, 1777, Gen. Burgoyne entered New York from Canada at the head of 8,000 British regu-

battle? How did the Americans retaliate? What occurred in April? What did Washington do in June? What did Howe attempt? Where did he retire? Who attacked his post on Staten Island, and with what success?

18. Where did Schuyler's army lie? Who marched against him, and with what force? Who commanded at Ticonderoga? How did he act?

lar troops and a large force of Canadians and Indians. General St. Clair, who commanded at Fort Ticonderoga, unable to hold out, abandoned his post on the 6th of July, and sending his baggage and stores in bateaux, retreated through Vermont to Whitehall. Burgoyne pressed on in pursuit, overtook the retreating Americans at Hubberton, and entirely dispersed them. At the same time he cut off the American bateaux, thus making himself complete master of Lake Champlain.

Burgoyne now detached a force of two thousand men under Colonel St. Leger to surprise Fort Schuyler on the Mohawk, and marched on, hoping to bring General Schuyler to battle. Schuyler, whose force was totally inadequate, fell back to the mouth of the Mohawk, throwing every obstacle in the way of the enemy, by destroying bridges, and choking up roads. At the Mohawk he encamped, to await reinforcements and supplies.

19. Burgoyne soon began to feel the want of provisions, for his advance was very slow. Hoping, too, to get recruits and horses, he despatched a force of 500 men, under Colonel Baum, to scour the country on his left. On the 14th of August, this officer, finding himself opposed by a large force of New Hampshire militia under Colonel Stark, intrenched himself six miles from Bennington, and sent back for

Where did Burgoyne overtake him? What was the result? What else did the Americans lose? What did Burgoyne now do? How far did Schuyler fall back? What did he do to prevent pursuit?

19. What did Burgoyne begin to feel? Where did he despatch Colonel Baum? Where did that officer meet the Americans? Who commanded the Americans? When did he attack Baum? With what success?

aid. The following day was so rainy that both parties rested, but on the 16th, Stark, with great gallantry stormed the intrenchments, and though the Indians and Canadians escaped, killed or took most of the Germans. Just then Colonel Breymen came up with a reinforcement to the English, and Warner with new forces to assist Stark. The battle was renewed, but at night the rout of the English was complete. In this hard-fought engagement, Stark and Warner, with a loss of only 14 killed and 42 wounded, killed 200 Germans, took 600 prisoners, and captured 1,000 muskets, and as many swords, with 4 pieces of artillery.

20. Meanwhile there had been severe fighting at Fort Schuyler, now Rome. St. Leger invested the fort early in August, but soon had to meet General Herkimer, who hastened up with the militia. Artfully drawing the American general into an ambuscade, St. Leger, on the 6th of August, killed Herkimer, and would have routed the militia entirely, had not Colonel Willett, at the critical moment, made a gallant sortie from the fort into the English lines. Under cover of this the militia at last drew off with great loss, and sent urgent letters to Schuyler for aid. The American general at once sent General Arnold, with three regiments to the relief of the fort, but that crafty officer filled St. Leger with such terror, that before the troops appeared

Who then reinforced the combatants? What was the result of the second battle?

20. Where had there been severe fighting? When did St. Leger invest the fort? Who attempted to raise the siege? What did St. Leger do? What saved the militia from a total rout? To whom did they now send? Who marched to relieve the fort? What stratagem did he practise?

the English general abandoned the siege, on the 22d of August, and fled, leaving his tents standing, and allowing much of his baggage to fall into the hands of Arnold.

21. By the middle of September, Burgoyne had advanced to Saratoga. The American army had meanwhile been greatly reinforced, but the command had, in consequence of the intrigues of a faction, been taken from Schuyler. It now advanced under General Gates, to attack Burgoyne. On the 19th of September, the English army attempted to force the American position at Stillwater, but after a long and bloody fight, in which the English lost 500, and the Americans 300, the Americans fell back into their camp. About the same time an American detachment surprised the British post on Lake George, seized their bateaux, and invested Ticonderoga.

Burgoyne, now hemmed in, intrenched his camp, and sent pressing messages to Clinton at New York, for, except by a diversion in his favor against the American rear, he saw no hope of escape. On the 7th of October he threw out a body of 1,500 men. These were immediately attacked by an American division, and after a desperate fight, in which the British lost their best officers, they were driven back to the camp. Arnold, who, without any command, headed the men, pursued the fugitives, and attempted

21. Where was Burgoyne in September? Who had been put in command of the Americans? What did he do? What was the battle of Stillwater? What was the British loss? What other advantage did the Americans gain? To whom did Burgoyne send for aid? What did he do on the 7th of October? Describe the action? What did Colonel Brooks effect?

to storm the intrenchments ; he failed, but Col. Brooks, of Massachusetts, carried the intrenchments of a German brigade, capturing stores, ammunition, and artillery.

22. Burgoyne, unable to dislodge Brooks, fell back by night to a stronger position, but soon despairing of success, commenced a rapid retreat. All hope, however, disappeared, when he found Lake George and the roads leading to it, in the hands of the Americans. On this he proposed a capitulation. Gates demanded an unconditional surrender, but at last, on the 17th of October, agreed to less severe terms, allowing Burgoyne to march out with the honors of war, and stipulating to conduct the troops to Boston, where, on a promise of not serving again in the war, they were to be allowed to embark for England. By this signal triumph, nearly six thousand men, with all their artillery, baggage, stores, and camp furniture fell into the hands of the Americans. On hearing of this disaster, the English abandoned Ticonderoga and retired to Canada, while Clinton, who had been ravaging the banks of the Hudson with singular ferocity, retired to New York.

23. Active operations had, meanwhile, taken place near Philadelphia. Washington had, as we have seen, expected an attack in some part from the English army, under Howe. That general, on the 27th of August, landed his forces at the head of Chesa-

22. What did Burgoyne then do ? What did he at last propose ? What did Gates demand ? What did he finally grant ? What thus fell into the hands of the Americans ? What fort was then abandoned ? What had Clinton been doing ?

23. Where did Howe land ? On what city did he advance ? When

peake Bay, and in two columns advanced on Philadelphia. Washington, gathering in all the militia whom he could draw from New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Delaware, met the enemy at Brandywine Creek, near Wilmington. Here a severe engagement took place on the 11th of September. One English column under Kniphausen attacked the Americans in front; another, under Cornwallis, made a great circuit to the left to attack them in the rear. General Sullivan was ordered to oppose Cornwallis, but mistaking his ground and forming too late, was defeated, and General Wayne, unable alone to check Kniphausen, retreated, and the whole American army fell back to Chester, having lost over a thousand men, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, the English loss not exceeding 600.

After an unsuccessful attempt to bring Howe to an engagement, in which a division under General Wayne was surprised by the English at Paoli with a loss of 300 men, Washington removed his magazines from Philadelphia, and left the city. Howe at once entered it and encamped at Germantown. Here Washington again attacked him on the 4th of October, but the American divisions after surprising the English, got separated in a fog, and unsupported by one another, at last drew off, losing 1,200 in killed, wounded, and prisoners, while the English loss was not over half that number. After this battle, Howe centred his

and where did Washington meet him? How did the English attack? Who opposed Cornwallis? With what success? What did Wayne effect? What was the loss on both sides? What other loss did the Americans experience? What did Washington do? Where did Howe encamp? When did Washington attack him? What defeated Washington?

whole force in Philadelphia, and Washington withdrew into winter quarters at Valley Forge, after calling in the garrisons of Forts Mifflin and Mercer, which had bravely repulsed the English and still held out.

24. Such was the position of affairs at the close of 1777. The English held New York, Newport, and Philadelphia, with their armies, but had gained not one of the states. Gates lay with a triumphant army at the north, without any force to oppose him. Washington, defeated in two successive battles, driven from Philadelphia, lay with a naked, destitute army at Valley Forge. Many began to doubt his ability; a new Board of War was formed, of which Gates was appointed president. A scheme was immediately set on foot to create Gates commander-in-chief, but Washington adroitly separated the officers opposed to him, and the plan failed. Relief at last came into his camp, and he prepared for a new campaign in the spring.

Congress had meanwhile been preparing a plan of confederation for the better union of the colonies, and at last, on the 15th of November, adopted the "Articles of Confederation." By these articles the United States were formed into one government for many purposes, the chief power being vested in Congress, which had authority to maintain an army and navy, conclude peace, and form alliances. The States how-

ton's plans? What was the result? What was the loss on both sides? Where did the two generals take up their quarters?

24. What did the English still hold? What had they gained? What did many begin to doubt? What was formed? What scheme was set on foot? What had Congress been preparing? What was their object? How was it ratified by the states?

ever, ratified it slowly; and it was not till the close of the war that a Government was organized under the articles.

25. The ministry in England, alarmed at last at the issue of a war in which victory was almost as disastrous as defeat, and in which an army would be required for every city, resolved to compromise matters, if possible. The English merchants, too, ruined by the war, called for peace, and Lord North yielding to the position of affairs, in February introduced into Parliament two bills of conciliation offering more than the colonies had ever asked. They passed without opposition, and received the royal assent, but it was too late.

On the introduction of North's bills of conciliation, the French ministry resolved to thwart it, and intimated to the American commissioners their disposition to treat. The proposition of Vergennes was eagerly met. Two treaties were speedily signed; one of friendship and commerce, the other of defensive alliance, in case Great Britain should declare war against France. The great object of these treaties was to secure the mercantile and political independence of the United States, and no peace was to be made till this was obtained.

26. England now recalled her minister from Paris, and declared war. France sent out a fleet under the Count D'Estaing, to blockade the English in Phila-

25. What did the English ministry resolve to do? Who called for peace? What did North introduce? What did the French ministry do? What treaties were signed? What was their object?

26. How did France then act? What did England do? When did

delphia. The English government, however, sent orders to Howe to retire to New York, and on the 18th of June, 1778, Clinton, who had succeeded Howe, evacuated Philadelphia, and sending his baggage around by sea, marched across Jersey towards New York. Washington immediately followed him with a superior force, and at Monmouth resolved to risk a battle. General Lee advanced with part of the American army, and on the 28th of June began the attack, but being unsupported by the main army, fell back to avoid being surrounded. Washington, however, soon arrived, and after a sharp exchange of words, Lee formed his line again. A warm, but indecisive action followed, which was broken off by the approach of night. The Americans in this engagement lost about 200, the British 300, but Clinton, whose ranks were daily thinned by desertion, retreated rapidly to New York. Lee for his conduct in the engagement was tried by a court-martial, for disobedience of orders, disrespect to the commander-in-chief, and a disorderly retreat. He was, however, acquitted of these, but to the surprise of the army condemned for cowardice, and suspended for a year. He never joined the army again.

27. Soon after the retreat of Clinton, D'Estaing arrived with his fleet, and after projecting with Washington an attack on New York, which was given up, as he could not enter the harbor, it was resolved to

Clinton evacuate Philadelphia? Where did Washington overtake him? Who began the attack? What was the result? What did Washington do? What was done with Lee? Of what was he found guilty?

27. What attack was now projected by the French fleet? What Amer-

attack Newport by sea and land. General Sullivan, appointed to command the American forces, soon appeared before that city, and being joined by the French fleet was about to assault the English works on the 10th of August, when Admiral Howe and the English fleet appeared in sight. D'Estaing immediately sailed out to engage him, but a storm prevented a battle, and shattered both fleets. Howe drew off to New York, and the French admiral, in spite of the entreaties of General Sullivan, sailed to Boston to refit. Left to himself, Sullivan resolved to retreat, pursued and attacked by Pigot, he maintained his ground in a sharp action, in which he lost 200 men and the enemy still more. He then succeeded in drawing off his army in safety. The failure of this expedition caused great dissatisfaction, and as the French soon after sailed for the West Indies, the old prejudice against France began to revive.

Seizing the favorable moment, the English Commissioners sent out under Lord North's conciliatory bill, endeavored to effect their object, but their addresses to Congress, their applications to the American generals, their attempts at bribery, had not failed more signally than their appeal to the religious prejudices of the people against the French. Despairing of success, they at last returned to England, to the great relief of Congress.

28. The war now assumed a savage character.

ican army was to co-operate? Who suddenly appeared? What did D'Estaing do? What did Sullivan do in consequence? Who pursued him? What was the result of the engagement? What did the English commissioners attempt?

28. What character did the war now assume? Where did the Tories

Parties of tories, posted in Western New York urged the Indians to war, and in July a party of tories and Senecas dashed into Wyoming Valley; the first American fort was treacherously given up, the soldiers posted in the town were defeated with heavy loss, and Fort Wyoming at last surrendered. In this attack the Indians destroyed most of the houses, massacring the inhabitants and pillaging the country. The commanders at New York and Newport were scarcely less sanguinary. An expedition from Newport burned New Bedford and New Haven, and ravaged Martha's Vineyard; another from New York burned Egg Harbor, in New Jersey, and surprising small troops of Americans put all to death, refusing to give quarter.

Congress resolved to secure the West. Troops were sent to Wyoming, and a regiment was detached against Unadilla on the Susquehanna, which had become the centre of hostile incursions. The tories retaliated by an attack on Cherry Valley in November, killing many of the inhabitants, and carrying off numbers of prisoners, and immense quantities of pillage. The West had meanwhile been secured by the intrepidity of George Clark, under authority from the State of Virginia. After a long and dangerous march, he surprised Kaskaskia and Cahokia; the French settlers at once joined him, and by the advice of Mr. Gibault, the priest stationed at Kaskaskia, Vincennes

and Indians commit great ravages? What valley did they enter? What was the result? What parts were ravaged by troops from Newport? from New York? What did Congress do to protect the frontier? How did the tories retaliate? Who was sent to the French posts in the Illinois country? How was he received? Who aided him effectually in establishing American authority?

acknowledged the United States. Clark, having thus secured the Illinois country, built a fort where Louisville now stands, and thus checked any Indian hostility in the West.

29. A four years' war had satisfied the British government of the difficulty of reducing the Northern and Middle States. The South seemed to offer greater hope, and a detachment of 3,000 men under Colonel Campbell was sent in December to Savannah. General Howe, the American commander, with only 1,200 men, attempted to defend the city; but Campbell, gaining his rear, routed him, killing or taking half his force, and thus almost without loss possessing himself of Savannah, with all its shipping, artillery, and stores. As the news of this spread, the American leaders fled, and the tories, who were numerous, took the field in large numbers. Between them and the militia a bloody guerilla warfare was long carried on, in which the regulars were often concerned. Prevost, who succeeded Campbell took Sunbury and Augusta, and even for a time held Port Royal, till repulsed by Moultrie.

30. General Lincoln, the American commander, however, in February, 1779, sent General Ashe to recover Augusta, having already defeated a body of tories. Campbell evacuated Augusta, and retired, pursued by Ashe, but wheeling around at Brier Creek,

29. Of what were the British now convinced? What new expedition was prepared? Who attempted to defend the city? How did Campbell defeat him? With what loss? What ensued on the defeat of Howe? What other places were taken by the English? Who repulsed them at Port Royal?

30. Who did Lincoln send against Augusta? What befell him? What was his loss? What did Lincoln do in April? What did Prevost do?

he again took the Americans in the rear, and with a loss of less than twenty, routed Ashe, who lost 400 killed or taken, and all his artillery and baggage. On this decisive victory, Campbell returned to Augusta.

In April, Lincoln, now reinforced, advanced on Augusta, leaving Moultrie to guard the southern part of the river. Prevost at once crossed into South Carolina, and driving Moultrie before him, advanced on Charleston: before Lincoln could return, he appeared before the city and summoned it to surrender. Governor Rutledge had fortified it, and with Moultrie's force, a battalion from Lincoln, and Pulaski's legion, could make some defence, yet he offered to stipulate the neutrality of his State during the rest of the war. Prevost refused this, and ravaging the country retired into St. John's Island, which he fortified. In June, Lincoln appeared and endeavored to force this position: he failed with some loss, but Prevost retired to Georgia.

31. The English now changed their plan at the North, and began a series of depredations. In May a detachment under Mathews took Norfolk and Gosport in Virginia, destroyed 130 merchant vessels, and nine ships of war, and returned to New York with an immense booty, having destroyed or carried off property to the amount of two millions of dollars. Clinton in person then marched from New York up the North River, and after compelling the Americans to

What offer did Rutledge make? Where did Prevost intrench himself? What did Lincoln attempt in June?

31. What did the English begin at the north? What did Mathews take, and when? How much property did he destroy? What places did Clinton take? Who recovered Stony Point? How?

abandon Stony Point, took Verplanck's Point. An American force under Wayne recovered Stony Point in July by one of the most brilliant feats in the war, but Washington was compelled to evacuate it soon after.

32. Meanwhile the English, under Tryon, were ravaging the shores of Long Island Sound, where they plundered New Haven, and burnt Fairfield and Norwalk. These depredations were a serious injury to the Americans, and inflamed their indignation to the highest pitch. Besides these reverses, an expedition under Saltonstall, fitted out by Massachusetts against the Penobscot, was surprised by an English fleet under Sir George Collier, and totally destroyed, the Americans with difficulty escaping to the woods. The surprise of the English post at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City, was the only success to counterbalance all these disasters.

In August General Sullivan, at the head of three Continental brigades, marched to Wyoming, and being joined by Clinton at the head of a New York brigade, advanced towards Niagara, which it was his object to take. Where Elmira now stands, a strong body, partly Indians, and partly tories under Brant, the Butlers and Johnson, prepared to receive him. Sullivan detached Poor to attack their rear, and in person assailed them in front. After a resolute defence, the

32. What was Tryon ravaging? What expedition did Massachusetts fit out? With what result? What post did the English surprise? What campaign was undertaken in August? Who joined Sullivan? Where were the tories and Indians posted? How did Sullivan attack, and with what result? How did he follow up his victory? Why did he not attack Niagara?

English gave way with great loss, and fled. Sullivan pursued them, and ravaged the Indian country, destroying eighteen villages, and immense quantities of corn and fruit trees. For some unexplained reason, Sullivan abandoned the attack on Niagara, and returned.

33. Spain had now joined France in the war, and the United States sought to gain her alliance, and also to open negotiations with England for peace. The United States were now almost powerless at sea, their vessels being nearly all captured or lost. A few cruisers were fitted out from French ports which did some service. John Paul Jones, an officer of the American navy, had made himself formidable, and about this time sailed out with a French and American squadron, and on the 24th of September attacked a British merchant fleet, convoyed by a heavy frigate and one other vessel. A most desperate engagement ensued, and Jones, just as his own ship, the Bon Homme Richard, was sinking, boarded the English frigate and took her. The other vessel was also taken, and the fleet fell into his hands.

Pending these proceedings, Admiral D'Estaing returned to the American coast, and with Lincoln formed a plan for attacking Savannah. After a short siege, D'Estaing, impatient of delay, resolved to make an assault. It was made by two columns, one consisting of American troops, and the other of French and Irish troops, on the 9th of October, 1779; but the

88. What country now joined France? What did the United States seek? How were they at sea? Where were cruisers fitted out? Who was the ablest commander of these? What was his great exploit? Describe it? What plan was formed by Lincoln and D'Estaing? What did they finally do? What was the result of the assault? What was the loss?

allies were repulsed with great loss, no less than a thousand men, and among them the gallant Pulaski falling, while the British loss was only 55.

34. On the first tidings of D'Estaing's return, Clinton recalled the garrisons of Newport, Stony Point and Verplanck's Point, and began to put New York in a state of defence; but on hearing of his departure after the failure at Savannah, he embarked for the place with 7,000 men, leaving Kniphausen in command at New York. Arriving at Savannah, after a stormy voyage, Clinton repaired to the Carolinas, and prepared to attack Charleston, now occupied by General Lincoln and the Southern army. The English showed great activity and skill: on the 14th of April, a detachment under Tarleton surprised the American horse at Monk's Corner, and cut them to pieces, and no sooner had the fragments of the corps reunited, than Tarleton again surprised them. Lincoln was now completely surrounded, and on the loss of Fort Moultrie, offered to surrender; but the terms were rejected, and Clinton pushed the siege with vigor. At last on the 12th of May, Lincoln, having obtained better terms, surrendered with all his forces, and thus the entire South was in the hands of the English.

35. At the time of the fall of Charleston, Colonel Buford was marching with a Virginia regiment to its relief: on the news of its surrender he began a rapid retreat; but the active Tarleton, by a march of 105

34. What had Clinton done? What was his next step? What city did he attack? What success did Tarleton have? What was Lincoln's position? What did he offer? When did he surrender?

35. Who was marching to his aid? What befell him? What was the

miles in fifty-four hours, overtook him at Waxhaws, and taking him by surprise, cut his force to pieces. No quarter was given; one hundred and thirteen Americans were killed, and 200 taken, while Tarleton's loss was less than twenty. Clinton now re-established the royal authority, compelled all to take the oath of allegiance, and sailed back to New York, leaving Cornwallis in command at the South.

Washington hearing of the fate of Lincoln's army, despatched De Kalb with the Delaware and Maryland regiments to the Carolinas, to unite with the Virginia regiment at Salisbury. He himself, now joined by a French army under Rochambeau, which reached Newport on the 10th of July, resolved to attack New York, but a British fleet and land army invested the French, and prevented any action.

36. In the South, meanwhile, the hopes of the Americans revived. As De Kalb advanced, Sumter took the field with his partisans, and successfully attacked the English at Rocky Mount, and Hanging Rock. Marion also began to annoy the British outposts. Lord Rawdon, who commanded these posts, centred his force at Camden. Gates, sent to command the American army, resolved to attack him, and marched across the country without waiting to form his troops, many of whom were raw recruits. Cornwallis hastened to Camden, and on Gates' approach sallicid out to meet him. The armies met unexpected-

one? What did Clinton restore? Whom did Washington despatch to the South? What did he project? What defeated his plans?

36. What skirmishes took place at the South? Where did Lord Rawdon draw up? Who was appointed to command the Americans? What did he do? Who now took command of the English? How did he act?

ly, and the English charging at the point of the bayonet on the militia, who formed Gates's left and centre, routed them in an instant. The continentals, on the right, held out till their commander, De Kalb, was mortally wounded, then surrounded on all sides, they broke and fled. All the artillery and baggage fell into the hands of Cornwallis, who lost only 325 men. The American army was annihilated; 900 were killed, many more taken prisoners, and of his whole force, Gates could muster but 200. Sumter, who had just captured a British convoy, retreated, but was pursued, overtaken, and surprised by the active Tarleton, and his corps dispersed with the loss of 150 killed and 300 prisoners. Many of the latter having previously taken British protection, were now hanged, and a general confiscation was made of the property of those who acknowledged Congress.

37. While disaster thus overtook the Americans at the South, Arnold, one of the boldest and bravest of their generals, deserted the cause, and by a deep-laid treachery had well-nigh surrendered West Point into the hands of the English. While at Philadelphia he had entered into a correspondence with Clinton, and obtained the command of West Point, only in order to betray it into his hands. To carry out the affair, Clinton sent Major Andre to West Point, and that officer having arranged all with Arnold, was re-

Describe the battle of Camden. What was the American loss? How many men could Gates rally? What befell Sumter? What were the results of this battle?

37. Who deserted the Americans? What post had he obtained, and with what design? How was the plan discovered? What befell Andre? What was done with Andre?

turning to New York, when he was stopped by three Americans, on the 23d of September, and acknowledging himself a British officer, was held as a prisoner. His attempts to escape excited suspicion; search revealed the documents which he bore. Arnold, hearing of this capture, fled to an English vessel, leaving Andre to his fate.

A court-martial met to try Andre, and soon condemned him to death as a spy. Clinton in vain endeavored to save him; he was hanged according to the usage of war, of which the English had already given an example, by executing an American officer taken in a more honorable transaction.

38. Congress had been for some time maturing a plan for a new organization of the army, which now went into operation. Washington sent Greene to the South to succeed Gates, and form a new army of the fragments of the last, and such additional regiments as the commander-in-chief could send. Cornwallis meanwhile was marching into North Carolina, in three divisions, led by himself, Tarleton and Ferguson. Ferguson, who commanded the tories, was considerably to the west, and turned off to meet some militia, when he was alarmed by the approach of mounted backwoodsmen under Shelby and Sevier. He retreated with precipitation, but at King's Mountain drew up to give battle. On the 9th of October, an obstinate fight ensued, but Ferguson and 150 of his party

38. What was Congress now doing? Who was sent to the south? Into what state was Cornwallis marching? Who overtook Ferguson's division? Describe the battle of King's Mountain. What did Cornwallis then do? Where did Sumter repulse Tarleton? Where were hostilities also going on?

were killed, and the rest wounded or taken. On hearing of this defeat Cornwallis fell back, and General Leslie, who had landed with an English force in Virginia, sailed to Charleston.

The success at King's Mountain revived the hopes of Marion and Sumter, who again began to haraas the English. Tarleton was soon in pursuit, but was repulsed with loss by Sumter at Blackstock Hill, in November. Sumter was, however, severely wounded, and for a time forced to retire. This closed, in a measure, the operations of the year in the United States; but the war had now become general in Europe, extending even to India, while the fleets of France and England were battling in the West Indies.

39. The American army had never been well armed, equipped or supplied. Owing to the inability of Congress to raise money, and the depreciation of the continental currency, the soldiers were often subjected to the greatest hardships and suffering. In January, 1781, the Pennsylvania line marched out of the camp at Morristown, killing an officer who attempted to restrain them, and wounding several others. Encamping at Princeton they demanded redress, and Congress, finding that British emissaries were already among them, yielded to their demands, on which they returned to duty, executing as spies the British agents. A revolt of the Jersey line followed, but this Washington repressed by executing the leaders.

40. While the army was in this desperate state,

39. What had been the state of the American army? Why? What took place in January, 1781? What did the English do? How were they appeased? What other line revolted?

Arnold, whose example was before them, made a descent upon Virginia at the head of 1,900 British troops. After ravaging a great part of the coast, he withdrew with his booty to Portsmouth, and intrenched himself there, on the 20th of January 1781. Washington resolved to capture him, and ordered Lafayette with 1,200 men to Virginia, while the French fleet sailed to blockade Portsmouth by sea. The fleet was, however, attacked by Admiral Arbuthnot and forced back to Newport, so that the English reinforcements reached Arnold, and Lafayette withdrew.

41. In the South General Greene at once showed his usual energy. Morgan was sent across the Broad River, to operate on the British left and rear. The British commander immediately detailed Tarleton to hold him in check, and Morgan, afraid of being cut off, fell rapidly back and took post at Cowpens. Here he was furiously attacked by Tarleton on the 17th of January, and his militia entirely routed; but his regular troops stood firm; they poured in a terrible volley, and charging the English, routed them in turn; the American cavalry dashing down on the English horse, now scattered in the pursuit, completed the overthrow of Tarleton. That officer, having lost 600 killed or taken, with all his baggage and artillery, escaped with a few horsemen to Cornwallis.

After this signal victory, in which he lost only 60

40. What state did Arnold enter? Where did he finally intrench himself? Whom did Washington send against him? What drove off the French fleet?

41. What was Greene's first step? Where did Morgan take post? Who attacked him? Describe the battle of Cowpens. What was Tarleton's

men, Morgan kept on his retreat, pursued by Cornwallis, who overtook him at the Catawba, and was prevented from attacking only by a sudden rise of the river. Greene now joined Morgan with a slight guard, and continued the retreat: at the Yadkin he lost some of his baggage, but Cornwallis had no boats, and finding it impossible to prevent the junction of the two American divisions, moved to the fords of the Dan to cut off Greene from Virginia. The American general was, however, too active: by forced marches, tracked by his barefooted soldiers in blood, he reached Virginia, leaving the Carolinas and Georgia without an army.

42. To prevent the tories in North Carolina from rising, Greene sent a detachment into that State, and several skirmishes took place. Having received reinforcements, he himself advanced, and on the 15th of March met Cornwallis at the Guilford Court House. An indecisive battle followed, in which Greene after losing 400 men and several pieces of artillery, ordered a retreat. Cornwallis, however, though master of the field, had lost over five hundred men, and was so weakened that he fell back to Fayetteville.

The commanders on both sides were able men, and more generalship was displayed than in the northern campaigns. Greene, instead of returning to Virginia, resolved to make a sudden march into South Carolina, and attack Lord Rawdon at Camden, before Corn-

loss? What did Morgan do after the battle? Where did Cornwallis overtake him? Who joined Morgan? What did Cornwallis then attempt? How did Greene baffle him?

42. What were Greene's next steps? Describe the battle of Guilford Court House? What was the English loss? What sudden march did

wallis could come up. He was far on the march before Cornwallis perceived his design, and the English commander, instead of pursuing him, pushed on to effect a junction with Arnold in Virginia. On the 25th of April, Greene, while encamped at Hobkirk's Hill, was attacked by Lord Rawdon, and after a hard fought battle was driven over the hill: the loss on both sides was about the same, and Greene was only checked, while Rawdon, learning that Marion and Lee had taken some of the posts in his rear, retreated to Monk's Corner. Greene now took Fort Motte, Fort Granby and Augusta, and besieged Ninety Six; but his storming parties were repulsed with loss, and Rawdon's approach with an army swelled by new regiments from Ireland, compelled him to retire. Lord Rawdon, however, found that he had lost ground; executions failed to strike terror, and abandoning Ninety Six, he drew nearer in to the Savannah. Greene had thus by well-fought battles regained the South, hemming the English army into a comparatively narrow district. To complete the overthrow of English power in the South, the Spaniards from Louisiana, under Galvez, took Pensacola in May, capturing the whole British garrison.

43. In Virginia the only American force was that under Lafayette, now under orders to join Greene. Philips, who had succeeded Arnold, sweeping off all kinds of plunder, advanced on Richmond, but finding

Greene make? How did Cornwallis act? Describe the battle of Hobkirk's Hill. What were their operations after this battle? What did Greene besiege, and with what success? Why did he retire? To what city did Rawdon retire? What blow did the Spaniards strike?

43. What American army lay in Virginia? What two English armies

it occupied by Lafayette, at last in May effected a junction with Cornwallis at Petersburg. That general soon after received a reinforcement of four regiments from New York, and was again at the head of a powerful force. Lafayette, unable to cope with him, retreated, in order to join Wayne, who was coming to his relief with the Pennsylvania regiment. On effecting this junction, Lafayette again advanced, but Cornwallis having received orders to return to New York, marched off to Williamsburg. After a short contest at Jamestown ford, Cornwallis reached Portsmouth in July, and prepared to embark.

Sir Henry Clinton, the commander-in-chief of the English forces, was now in great perplexity as to Washington's designs, for from day to day the American commander menaced an attack with his own and Rochambeau's forces, either on New York or on Virginia. Clinton at first summoned Cornwallis to New York, then prepared to reinforce him, and finally ordered him to keep himself in readiness to join him at any moment. In consequence, Cornwallis finally encamped at Yorktown and Gloucester, with 8,000 men, his camp being covered by several frigates and smaller vessels.

44. Washington, though his army was only 7,000 strong, resolved on action, and Rochambeau marching from Newport, joined him at the Highlands. Rochambeau was opposed to an attack on New York, and

united? What reinforcements did he receive? What did Lafayette do? Where did a sharp contest take place? Where did Cornwallis prepare to embark? Who was in great perplexity, and why? What orders did he successively send to Cornwallis? Where did that general encamp?

44. What did Washington resolve to do? Where did he unite with

Washington, hearing that De Grasse would soon be for a time in the Chesapeake, resolved to strike a sudden blow at Cornwallis, and ordered Lafayette to cut off his retreat into Carolina. On the last day of August, De Grasse, having fortunately missed a British fleet, entered the Chesapeake, blockaded James and York rivers, and landed 3,000 troops to join Lafayette. Admiral Graves with the English fleet soon appeared, and De Grasse sailed out to meet and check him, till the fleet from Newport came up with the siege artillery. It at last arrived and entered the Chesapeake safely. Graves, who had lost one vessel and had suffered much in the manœuvring, sailed off. Washington had reached the head of the Bay the same day that De Grasse entered it: transports soon brought his army down, and uniting with Lafayette at Williamsburg, the allies proceeded to Yorktown. The place was invested on the 27th of September, 1781, with a force of 16,000 men: Cornwallis had but half that number, but his works were strong, and he held out. The besiegers pushed their works with rapidity, and on the 14th of October, two columns, the French under Lafayette, and the Americans under Hamilton, carried two redoubts, and made them part of their works. The ramparts of Cornwallis now began to crumble; a sally was attempted, but without success. As a last resort, he thought of passing the army over to

Rochambeau? Which army did he resolve to attack, and why? What orders did he give Lafayette? When did De Grasse enter the Chesapeake, and what did he do? Why did he sail out, and with what effect? When did Washington reach the Chesapeake? Where did the armies unite? When did they invest Yorktown? When was the first assault made, and with what success? What did Cornwallis attempt? What, as a last re-

Gloucester, and cutting his way through to New York; but a violent storm dispersed his boats, and hopeless of relief, he at last, on the 19th of October, capitulated. His army, consisting of 7,000 men, became prisoners of war; the ships and naval stores, with 1,500 seamen, were given up to the French. General Lincoln, who had surrendered to Cornwallis at Charleston, was now appointed to receive his sword, and the army marched out as prisoners of war.

45. Soon after the surrender of Yorktown, Clinton appeared at the mouth of the Chesapeake, with 7,000 men, but hearing of the result of the siege, returned in haste to New York. Washington wished to follow up this victory by an attack on Charleston, but as De Grasse declined, he sent Wayne with 2,000 men to aid Greene in the South, and leaving Rochambeau in Virginia returned to the banks of the Hudson, and earnestly exhorted Congress to make a final effort to raise an efficient army and terminate the war. The people, however, considered peace now inevitable, and showed little alacrity; the English cooped up in New York, Charleston, and Savannah, were no longer formidable; and the Articles of Confederation, now adopted by all the States, and about to become the government of the land, called for more attention. Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee, claimed by adjacent States, demanded a separate existence, and representation in Congress.

sort? What defeated his plan? When did he capitulate? What fell into the hands of the allies? Who received the sword of Cornwallis?

45. Who now appeared? What did Washington urge? Whom did he send to the south? What did he urge on Congress? How were the people inclined? What had been adopted by the states? What states sought admission?

46. In England the news produced a decisive result. Russia and Germany had previously offered to mediate, and had proposed terms which England, in August 1781, haughtily rejected. She was loth to recognize the colonies as independent states, but finding the United States immovable on this point, yielded, and opened negotiations for peace early in 1782. In consequence of this a cessation of hostilities took place in America, except in Ohio, where a cold-blooded massacre of some Moravian Indians involved the whole frontier in war, and led to the total defeat and slaughter of Colonel Crawford and his troops, by the Wyandots, near Sandusky, in June, 1782. The contest now indeed assumed the character of an Indian war: in Kentucky, the savages, after a long and desperate struggle, defeated a party of settlers at the Lower Blue Licks, and wasted all before them till checked by the expeditions of Logan and Clarke. The more Southern States were ravaged by the Creeks and Cherokees, against whom Wayne was detached. Undeterred by his approach, they even assailed his camp, but after Pickens in two expeditions had ravaged their country, the Cherokees made peace in October, 1782, and the Creeks soon after.

47. Meanwhile the negotiations were proceeding in Europe; distrustful of France, the American com-

46. What was the result of this news in England? What offer had England refused? When did she open negotiations? What took place in America? What took place in Ohio? Who was defeated by the Wyandots? What battle was fought in Kentucky, and with what result? What Indians were ravaging the south? What did they attack? Who reduced them? When was peace made?

missioners negotiated separately with England, and on the 30th of November, 1782, signed at Paris the preliminary articles of peace, Oswald acting on behalf of England, Adams, Franklin, Jay and Laurens on behalf of the United States. The other belligerent powers, France, Spain and Holland, also signed preliminary articles, and on the 3d of September, 1783, the definitive treaties of peace were signed by the representatives of all the powers, and the Revolutionary War was ended. This war involved many parts besides the United States, but its history belongs to European affairs. We have followed it only as connected with the struggle of the Americans.

The treaty of 1763, had recognized the Mississippi as the western limit of the English colonies, and though the Quebec act of 1774, gave to Canada all north of the Ohio, the old boundary was now resumed, and the United States were to be bounded on the west by the Mississippi, and on the north by the great lakes, Superior, Huron, Erie, Ontario, and the St. Lawrence, to the Indian town of St. Regis, whence it struck east. On the south as England restored Florida to Spain, the St. Mary's became the southern boundary. Besides this, an unlimited right of fishing on Newfoundland was conceded to the States.

48. In consequence of the peace, a cessation of

47. When were preliminary articles of peace signed? By whom? When did the other powers sign? When were definitive treaties signed? Where else had hostilities been carried on? What boundary had the peace of 1763 fixed? What had altered this? What was now done? What was to be the western boundary of the United States? the northern? the southern? To whose hands had Florida passed? What right of fishing did America obtain?

hostilities was proclaimed in the American army on the 19th of April, 1783, just eight years after the battle of Lexington, and in November the American army received orders to disband. About the same time the English evacuated New York, Charleston and Savannah, leaving the American coast unpolluted by the tread of a hostile army. Congress had constantly during the war been greatly distressed for want of money: the several States had not paid up their contingents; the paper money issued had lost all value, and now that the war was ended, the exchequer was empty, and Congress had no means to pay the army its arrears. A revolt seemed imminent. A foreign officer proposed to Washington to declare himself king; other members of the army formed coalitions to overawe Congress, and a body of mutineers beset them, so that they transferred their sittings from Philadelphia to Princeton. At last, however, Washington's prudence, and an act of Congress entitling each officer and soldier to a reasonable allowance, restored peace.

49. On the disbanding of the army, Washington proceeded to Annapolis where Congress was in session, and after tendering his accounts of all moneys that had passed through his hands, resigned his commission. On the 23d of December, Mifflin, President of Congress, in a well deserved eulogy, paid every honor to the prudence, courage, and unbroken zeal

48. When was the cessation of hostilities proclaimed? When was the army disbanded? What cities did the English evacuate? What had the states failed to do? What was the state of the treasury? What proposals were made? What restored peace?

49. Where was Congress in session? Who proceeded to that place,

which had characterized his course. "Having defended the standard of liberty in this new world; having taught a lesson useful to those who inflict and those who feel oppression, you retire from the great theatre of action, with the blessings of your fellow-citizens; but the glory of your virtues will not terminate with your military command—it will continue to animate remotest ages." At the close of this address Washington withdrew, and retired to Mount Vernon, unconscious that all eyes turned to him, as the man best fitted to extricate their country from the troubles that involved it.

50. Such was the Revolutionary War, which had been begun by an undisciplined and temporary army, and had been carried on against every difficulty for eight years, seldom cheered by signal victories; but the country, although the army was at times defeated, was never for a moment subdued, and finally secured the independence which it claimed. The sacrifices of the patriots were enormous, but there was no murmuring, and all looked forward with hope to the new era. The officers, who had so well served the country, now retired to private life, and entering various professions, were lost amid their fellow-citizens.

and for what purpose? How did Mifflin address him? Where did Washington retire?

50. How had the war been begun? How long had it lasted? At what sacrifices was independence obtained? What became of the officers?



CHAPTER IX.

THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION—THE CONSTITUTION—WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. During the Revolutionary War the colonies had generally adopted Constitutions, some of which were crude, requiring frequent alteration; others, especially that of New York, were compiled with great care.

The government was merely a restoration of the colonial legislatures to which the people were so attached, and in fact preserved the same names. The governor and council appointed by the crown were, however, replaced by a council, or by a governor and council elected by the people. These separate governments, as before, had the entire control of matters in their several territories; they alone raised money by tax, and legislated in ordinary matters. The affairs of the league, so far as the negotiations with foreign countries, and the conduct of the war were concerned, were vested in the Continental Congress; but it had no revenue, no means of raising money, except by recommending the several States to furnish their

1. What had been formed during the war? What was their nature? What powers did they exercise? What powers vested in Congress? Of

proportions of the amounts needed. This Congress was made up of delegates chosen by the several State governments, and the President of Congress was the virtual head of the United States; the personal representative of the sovereignty of the Union, and the ceremonial of his household was regulated on that footing. This high office was filled successively by Peyton Randolph, John Hancock, Henry Laurens, John Jay, Samuel Huntington, Thomas McKean, John Hanson, Elias Boudinot, Thomas Mifflin, Richard H. Lee, Nathaniel Gorham, Arthur St. Clair, and Cyrus Griffin.

2. Articles of Confederation had been drawn up for a better securing of union between the States, but as some States at first declined acceding, it was not till the spring of 1781 that they were ratified by all, and became the law of the Union. No sooner was the new government in operation under the Articles of Confederation, with Hanson as President, than the question of providing for the immense debt of the Union came up. It was now found that the Articles limited, rather than increased the power of Congress. It could lay no tax or duty: on all important points the assent of nine States was required, and two members at least from each State must vote. In the attempt made to induce the States to contribute to the payment of the debt, Congress failed most signally, several States declining under various pretexts. The army was, as we have seen, clamorous, and the many

what was it destitute? Of what was the Congress composed? Who was the virtual head of the Union? Who filled this high office?

2 When did the Articles of Confederation become the law of the

creditors of the government no less so. It was evident that some step must be taken to give greater power to the general government. In the mean time Congress organized the Northwest Territory, and prepared for that of Kentucky and Tennessee, then actually in rebellion against Virginia and North Carolina. It also concluded treaties with France, Russia and Morocco; and regulated the currency by adopting the dollar as a standard, dividing it into a hundred parts called cents. A mint was established in 1786, and copper coin struck.

3. The poverty of the country, and the attempts of the States to raise means to pay their own debts, and their contributions to the federal treasury, caused great dissatisfaction. In December, 1786, a body of insurgents in Massachusetts took the field under Daniel Shays, a captain in the Continental army, and were dispersed only by the skill of General Lincoln, who marched against them with 3,000 men, and defeated them near Worcester. In consequence of this, and similar discontents in other States, a convention of delegates from all the States was called to meet at Philadelphia in May, 1787, to consider the Articles of Confederation, and propose such changes as might render them adequate to the exigencies of the Union. Approved by Congress, this convention met late in May, 1787, and represented all the States except re-

Union? What was immediately found? In what did Congress fail? What became evident? What did Congress however accomplish?

8. What caused dissatisfaction? What took place in Massachusetts? Who reduced them? What was now called? When did it meet? What State held back?

fractory Rhode Island, the first to refuse its contribution to the payment of the national debt.

4. Under the religious freedom now generally granted, the various religious bodies were completing their organization. Immediately after the peace of Paris, the Pope, through Dr. Franklin, then American minister at Paris, applied to Congress for some such arrangement as would enable him to appoint a Bishop for the American Catholics, without interfering with the laws of the country. On the reply of Congress, that the American government had no control whatever in matters purely spiritual, the Pope appointed the Rev. John Carroll, of Maryland, Prefect Apostolic, and subsequently Bishop of Baltimore. The Episcopalians also, sought a Bishop, but the Archbishop of Canterbury refused to consecrate one, unless he took the oath of allegiance to the king, and acknowledged the royal supremacy: in consequence of this, Dr. Seabury was consecrated by the Scotch Bishops in 1784. Parliament, however, passed an act in regard to the matter, and other American Bishops were ordained by the English prelates. The Presbyterians next organized on a national basis, and the Methodists, scarcely known as yet, began to gain great accessions throughout the country.

5. The Convention to revise the Articles of Confederation, met on the 25th of May, 1787, at the State House in Philadelphia. Washington, present

4. What religious organizations now took place? What application did the Pope make? What was the reply of Congress? What obstacle did the Episcopalians meet, and how did they avoid it? What other bodies organized?

as a delegate from Virginia, was appointed President of the Convention. On proceeding to business, Randolph of Virginia proposed a national legislature, in two Houses, a national executive and a judiciary. This scheme led to violent debates, the smaller States insisting on an equal representation in both Houses, the larger States wishing a representation proportioned to the population. A difficulty occurred too, in regard to the slaves, the small States insisting that the representation should be in proportion to the white population only; but a compromise was effected, and it was agreed that for this purpose the population of a slave State should be considered as the whole number of whites, and three fifths of the slaves. At last, on the 6th of August, 1787, the committee of detail brought in their report, a rough sketch of the constitution as it now stands. By this the national legislature preserved the honored name of Congress; the upper House took that of Senate, the lower, House of Representatives, the Executive that of President. Each State was to have two senators, and one representative for every forty thousand inhabitants. The form of the new government was thus complete; its powers led to more discussion. A party favored the abolition of slavery and the slave trade, and by another compromise the slave trade was permitted to the year 1800.

6. The direct powers conferred on Congress by this Constitution, were to treat with foreign powers, to

5. When and where did the Convention meet? Who was chosen President? What did Randolph propose? What ensued? What did the smaller States demand? What other difficulty arose? When did the committee report? What did it propose? Till what year was the slave-trade allowed?

raise and maintain an army and navy, to raise money by tax or by duty on imports, to coin money, regulate commerce with foreign nations, declare war, and make peace, and lastly, to make uniform laws on the subjects of naturalization and bankruptcy. All the powers thus granted to Congress were taken from the States, which were also prohibited from issuing bills of credit, patents of nobility, or laying duties on imports or exports. The regulation of trade with foreign countries and between the several States, and all intercourse with foreign governments, thus devolved exclusively on the General Government. Such was the Constitution adopted by the Convention after a discussion of four months. Few of the members approved of it as a whole; but as a compromise, all at last accepted it. The Convention adjourned in September, and transmitted the Constitution to the Continental Congress, to be laid before conventions in the several States.

7. The Constitution when made public met great opposition, as affording little security for personal liberty. In the several States long discussions ensued, but Delaware adopted the Constitution in December, and was soon followed by Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, and New Hampshire. By the terms of the Constitution it was to go into force as soon as approved

6. What were the direct powers vested in Congress? What was expressly forbidden the States? What devolved exclusively on the general government? How long did the discussion last? How was it accepted? When did the Convention adjourn?

7. How was the Constitution received? What states, however, accepted it? What two finally joined the rest? What two kept aloof?

by nine States. Virginia and New York opposed it, but as they must now either approve or withdraw from the league, they at last joined the rest. North Carolina gave only a conditional approval, and Rhode Island, still perverse, took no action in regard to it.

8. Northwest territory organized by Congress, was now governed by General St. Clair, who published a code of laws, and in every way facilitated emigration and colonization. Under this state of things Marietta arose, and settlements at the mouth of the Miami, and where Cincinnati stands. Western New York also rapidly filled up with emigrants from the Eastern States. Then, too, the Virginia emigrants in Kentucky attempted to obtain admission as a State, and the settlers on the Tennessee erected the State of Franklin, but were soon reduced. The Continental Congress forbore to take up these questions, leaving them to the new government, and that great body, having achieved its work—the Independence of America,—dissolved of itself.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, 1789-1797.

9. Elections now took place in all the ratifying States for Senators, Representatives, and Presidential electors. When the electors proceeded to choose, George Washington was unanimously elected President, and John Adams was chosen Vice President. Congress was to meet on the 4th of March, 1789,

8. How was the north-west territory governed? What towns arose? What other part colonized rapidly? What state sought admission? What state was established for a time? How did the Continental Congress act in regard to them?

9. What was the result of the first election? When and where did the

but a quorum did not arrive at New York till the 30th. Both Houses then organized, counted the electoral ballots, and proclaimed the election of Washington and Adams. The Vice President, on being notified, proceeded from Boston to New York, attended by a troop of horse, and took his seat on the 21st of April, as President of the Senate. Charles Thompson, Secretary of the Continental Congress, was now deputed to inform Washington of his election, and the illustrious man set out for New York. He sought to travel privately, but his path was a triumph. At Georgetown he was welcomed by the citizens. The President of Pennsylvania with a large escort advanced to the frontier to meet him. Trenton received him in a most touching and graceful manner, with triumphal arches, and a procession of young maidens greeting him with songs, and strewing flowers before him. On the 23d of April he entered New York with great pomp, and on the 30th was solemnly inaugurated President of the United States, on the porch of Federal Hall, the site of the Custom House, in presence of an immense concourse of people.

10. Washington organized his cabinet by appointing Thomas Jefferson Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury, and General Knox Secretary of War.

In its first session, Congress, anxious to provide

first Congress meet? What was their first act? When did Adams take his seat? Who was sent for Washington? Describe his journey to New York? When did he enter the city? When and where was he inaugurated?

10. How did Washington organize his cabinet? What was the first

for the national debt, passed a tariff imposing a duty on imports, and a tonnage duty.

To prevent an Indian war, commissioners were appointed to treat with the Creek and Cherokee Indians, both of whom threatened war.

The passage of the tariff which erected Custom Houses on the frontier, left North Carolina and Rhode Island as foreign states. Alarmed at this they both hastily adopted the Constitution, so that the whole thirteen colonies entered the new league. Virginia ceded Kentucky, and North Carolina ceded Tennessee, to the General Government.

11. At its next session, Congress, in March, 1790, adopted the State debts, and funded all according to a scheme devised by Hamilton, the Secretary of the Treasury. Much opposition was made to this, and all who had opposed the Constitution now rallied in opposition to the administration, led by Jefferson, who, though a member of Washington's cabinet, was so influenced by jealousy of Hamilton, that his conduct often tended to embarrass the administration. Two parties at once arose; the federalist, supporting the Constitution, and the anti-federal or republican party, which pretended to fear the establishment of a monarchy.

The Greeks accepted the proffered terms, and in June a treaty was concluded at New York, with

step of Congress? What was done to prevent an Indian war? What was the effect of the tariff? What did Virginia and North Carolina cede to the General Government?

11. What did Congress do at the next session? What resulted from this? Who led the opposition? What was Jefferson's motive? What two parties arose? What treaty was concluded in June? Who marched

McGillivray, the half-breed chief, by which all south and west of the Oconee was guaranteed to the Creeks. The Miamis were not, however, as tractable, and in October General Harmar marched from Fort Washington, now Cincinnati, with 1100 regulars and militia against the village on the Maumee. A detachment under Colonel Hardin burned the village, but was soon after almost cut to pieces by the ambushed foe; Harmar hearing of this, fell back, but suddenly advanced again to the village. Here an irregular battle took place, in which Harmar, after a loss of 150 men, drew off.

12. Congress meanwhile had organized a new territory south of the Ohio, and prepared to select a site for the federal district. In January, 1791, it passed an act laying a duty on domestic spirits, to enable it to meet and diminish the debt; this tax, light as it was, soon excited great murmurs, and finally a civil outbreak. According to Hamilton's plan, a charter was also granted to a national bank, called the Bank of North America; and to this, too, a strenuous opposition was made by the anti-federalists.

Although these dissensions seemed to shake the new government to its very foundations, the opponents were actuated rather by ambition and hostility to Hamilton than by any serious fears of the abuse of power. New States sought entrance, and in February an act was passed admitting Vermont, at the close of

against the Miamis? With what force? What did Hardin effect? How did Harmar act?

12. What had Congress organized? What did it pass in 1791? What did this excite? What bank was chartered? What really actuated the

the session, and Kentucky in June of the following year. The entrance of the latter was deferred, in order to enable the people to meet in convention and frame a constitution. In both these cases, the old States which laid claim to the territory embraced in Vermont and Kentucky, had ceded all their rights to the General Government.

13. The Indian war in the West meanwhile continued. General St. Clair, the governor of Northwest Territory, had in October marched with another army against the redoubted Miamis; but his progress was so slow, that his militia and Indian allies abandoned him in numbers, and it was November before he reached the Wabash and encamped. The Indians prepared to attack, and at sunrise on the 4th, under Little Turtle, burst on the American camp; the regulars formed to receive them, but the militia broke and fled, throwing all into confusion. One part of the regulars, charging at the point of the bayonet, drove the Indians back, but the attack was as constantly renewed, and the Indians repeatedly drove the artillery from their guns with slaughter. St. Clair, helpless from sickness, finding that his force was half destroyed, ordered a retreat. An effective charge gained them the road, and the American army abandoning artillery and baggage, began a retreat, which soon became a flight, for the militia next flung away their arms and

opposition? What new states were admitted? How? What had been ceded?

18. Who marched against the Miamis? When did he reach the Wabash? Who attacked him, and how? Describe the battle. What did St. Clair do? What was his loss?

accoutrements. In this fatal campaign St. Clair lost 59 officers and 600 men.

14. The efforts of Congress to organize the government were still slow, as the parties daily grew more violent. A bill for fixing the ratio of representation led to violent debates, and as first passed was vetoed by the President. An act to increase the army passed without opposition, in view of St. Clair's defeat, but when the question of the coinage came up, a stormy discussion ensued: the republican party stigmatized as monarchical a proposition to put the head of the President on the coin, and to gratify those who saw in this a danger to the liberties of the country, the head of the Goddess of Liberty was substituted.

Washington himself had been attacked in these party discussions, but as the epoch for a new election approached, all felt that he alone could save the country from dismemberment, and all united in urging him to consent to a re-election. Weary of his painful position, with a divided cabinet, exposed to every charge, Washington wished to resign, but finally yielded, and at the ensuing election was again chosen President, and Adams as Vice President. He was consoled for a moment by a reaction at the North in favor of the federal party, but new troubles soon arose which embittered his second administration, and almost deprived him of his popularity.

15. While negotiations were going on with the

14. What led to violent debates? What debate took place on the coinage? What was the general feeling with regard to Washington? What was he tempted to do? What was the effect of the opposition?

western Indians, whom Wayne was now appointed to check, and Hamilton was devising plans for a speedy extinction of the public debt, alarming news arrived from France. Louis XVI. had perished on the scaffold, war had been declared with England, and the new republic, counting on the alliance of the United States, had sent Genet out as ambassador. That minister, on his arrival, was warmly received by democratic clubs, which had been formed in connection with the Jacobin club of Paris. Intoxicated by this he began to issue commissions, and fit out privateers against England. A proclamation issued by the President produced no effect; and Genet, backed by the more ardent opponents of the administration, openly set it at defiance. In consequence of this, Washington at last requested the French government to recall him, and a law was passed prohibiting enlistments for foreign service.

16. The conduct of Genet, and the seizures made by his privateers, exasperated the English government, which was already complaining that the United States had violated the late treaty, by preventing English merchants from recovering debts due before the Revolution. Complaints were not wanting on the side of the Americans, who remonstrated against the continuance of English garrisons in various posts in the West, against the influence of English agents among

15. Who was appointed to check the Miamis? What news arrived from France? Who was sent out as minister? How was he received by the democrats? What did Genet do? How did he regard the President's proclamation? What did Washington request? What act was passed?

16. What exasperated the English government? What grounds of complaint had England? What grounds had the United States? What step

the Indians, and against the outrages committed on American shipping by English men-of-war, who boarded them, and impressed men as sailors, under the pretence that they were British subjects. In this difficult position, Washington resolved to send John Jay to England to negotiate a new treaty. The Senate ratified the choice, and Jay soon made such advances as to offer every prospect of peace.

Another foreign trouble now called attention. Algiers carried on a piratical war on all civilized commerce. Some American ships had been taken, and American citizens were held in slavery. To redeem these was an object of solicitude; the first means suggested was that of obtaining their release by the intervention of the pious religious of the order for the Redemption of Captives, but as their convents had been broken up by the French government, the United States was compelled to purchase peace of Algiers at an enormous expense.

17. Major-general Wayne had in several conferences sought to bring the Western Indians to terms of peace, but as, through the influence of English officers, and Indians from the English side, all his plans were defeated, he resolved on active measures, and in June, 1794, built Fort Recovery on the field of St. Clair's defeat. Here he was attacked, but repulsed the enemy, and having received a reinforcement of volunteers, he suddenly marched in August to the

did Washington take? What other foreign trouble arose? What was the first means attempted in order to liberate the captives? Why did it fail, and what was done?

17. What had Wayne done? What fort did he build, and where? What occurred here? Where did he build a new fort? What did the

confluence of the Auglaize and Maumee, where he built a new fort in an Indian town, and called it Fort Defiance. The Indians had retreated, but he pushed on in pursuit, and on the 20th of August, 1794, attacked the enemy under the guns of a British fort. The Indians for a time poured in a deadly fire, and endeavored to turn his flank, but Wayne charged them at the point of the bayonet, and falling on their rear with his cavalry, routed them with slaughter. He then ravaged their fields up to the fort, and retired to Fort Defiance, which he put in a state of defence. This splendid campaign, of 90 days, completely humbled the Western tribes, and destroyed all their hopes. They made overtures of peace, and on the 3d of August, 1795, Wayne concluded at Fort Greenville a treaty, by which the Western tribes ceded several portions of their lands, but retained most of the country north of the Ohio.

18. But while the Indian war on the frontier was thus arrested, a dangerous insurrection broke out in Western Pennsylvania. A systematic opposition to the excise law had been excited by scheming politicians: the United States officers were insulted, driven out, and menaced with death. Washington, on the refusal of Governor Mifflin to call out the militia, issued in August, 1794, a proclamation requiring these opposers of the laws to desist; at the same time he made requisitions on the governors of Pennsylvania.

Indians do, and how did Wayne act? Describe the battle of the Maumee. How long did this campaign last, and what did it effect? What treaty was made?

18. What broke out in Western Pennsylvania? How were the federal officers treated? What did Washington do in 1794? Why were a at t

New Jersey, Maryland and Virginia, for militia to the number of 13,000. Commissioners were sent on to offer an amnesty, but the rioters persisted in their course till the troops approached. Then the leaders, as often happens, fled, leaving their misguided followers to pay the penalty. Several arrests were made, but all finally escaped punishment. The government acquired renewed popularity by its exhibition of power, and when the news of Jay's treaty arrived, although the democratic clubs excited riots in several parts the people generally sustained the administration, and the House of Representatives passed an act appropriating money to carry it into execution. By this treaty England surrendered the Western posts which she still held, made compensation for illegal captures, and the United States secured British creditors proper means for collecting debts due prior to the Revolution.

19. The other acts of this Congress refer to internal affairs. In 1796, an act was passed regulating intercourse with the Indian tribes, and establishing a boundary along the Western frontier, beyond which no white man was to be allowed to go, either for hunting or pasturage, without a pass. This Indian territory was divided into two parts by Kentucky, but comprised nearly half the whole territory of the United States. Special provision was made for the punishment of offences committed by either party on the

treat with them? When did they submit? What was the effect of this conduct of government? Who opposed Jay's treaty? How did the people regard it? What was the substance of the treaty?

19. What were the other acts of Congress? How was this territory divided? For what was provision made? What resulted from these wise

other, and appropriations were made for supplying the Indians with agricultural implements, and saving them from being plundered by unprincipled traders. These provisions led to a general and secure peace.

A treaty with Spain had been some time negotiating, and was at last concluded, in October, 1795. It settled the 31st degree as the northern boundary of Florida, from the Mississippi to the Apalachicola; and thence from the junction of the Flint to the head of the St. Mary's; it left the navigation of the Mississippi free, and for a stipulated time gave Americans a right to deposit their goods in New Orleans. Both parties also pledged themselves to have no intercourse with the Indians in each other's territory.

In 1796, the people of Tennessee, acting on their own responsibility, declared themselves a State, adopted a constitution, and sent senators and a representative to Congress. These irregular proceedings were condemned, it being contended that Congress had the right to fix the territory of the new State, and take the census, in order to obtain the exact population. In this case, however, that was waived and the State admitted.

20. Such was the state of affairs at the close of Washington's second term. The country, under its new government, enjoyed peace and prosperity; the debt was gradually reduced; and extensive emigration had begun, especially from France and Ireland. Edu-

provisions? What treaty was made in 1795? What was made the northern boundary of Florida? What right was given to the Americans at New Orleans? What did both parties promise? What did Tennessee do in 1796? How was this regarded? What was done in this case?

20. What was the state of the country? How did the debt stand?

cational establishments multiplied, and New York adopted its system of common schools, though Pennsylvania rejected a similar one, believing that education without a religious basis may prove a curse and not a blessing.

As Washington drew near the close of his administration, he announced his intention of retiring, and in a noble Farewell Address, urged his fellow-citizens to cling around the new government, and sustain it, inculcating maxims of the highest political importance, and love of country. He soon after, in a session of Congress, took leave of them, congratulating them and the country on the success of the experiment. So great was the opposition to him, however, that no enthusiastic crowd gathered around him, and the reply to his last message was cold and common-place.

The new election had now taken place, and John Adams, the Vice-President, the candidate of the federal party was elected over Thomas Jefferson, the leader of the republicans, who, by the Constitution as it then stood, became Vice-President. This was the first occasion when the two parties were fairly arrayed against each other; and it enkindled still more the opposition between them.

What emigration began? What state adopted a system of free schools? Why did Pennsylvania reject one? What did Washington announce? What did he urge in his farewell address? What was the result of the opposition to him? Who were chosen President and Vice-President?



CHAPTER X.

ADAMS' AND JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

JOHN ADAMS, 1797-1801.

1. Adams was inaugurated as President on the 4th of March, 1797, and Jefferson on the same day took his seat as President of the Senate. Adams was well fitted for his post; calm, able, laborious, he was one of the few capable of preserving the new republic; his position was one of difficulty, and he at last lost the confidence of all parties, and retired unregretted.

The first object of his administration was to arrange matters with France. Pinckney, Marshall and Gerry, were sent out in 1797, to secure a peace. But Talleyrand, the French minister under the Directory, refused to receive them, and endeavored to extort a sum of money as a preliminary. Gerry belonged to the republican party, and was thought more favorable to France; he was ordered to remain on pain of instant war, while the other two were ordered to leave the country.

2. Congress meanwhile was organizing the country west of Georgia into a new territory, under the name

1. When was Adams inaugurated? What were his qualifications? What did he finally lose? What was his first object? Who were sent out to treat of peace? How were they received?

of Mississippi. A strong effort was made to prohibit slavery in this new territory, according to Jefferson's original plan ; but it was finally defeated, and it became slave territory. Georgia, which claimed the territory, remonstrated, but the General Government considering it as recently ceded by Spain, disregarded the protest. A governor was soon appointed, and the territory organized.

On the news of the hostile acts of the French Directory, Congress, despairing of obtaining justice for the outrages on our commerce, prepared for war. A law was passed authorizing the President to raise an army of 10,000 men on a declaration of war, and American men-of-war were authorized to seize any armed vessel committing depredations on American ships. To command the army now projected, Adams chose General Washington, who fully approved the course of the administration. A subsequent act authorized the increase of the army to 40,000 men and the enrolment of 78,000 volunteers, but the army was never needed. A few collisions took place at sea ; some French, but more American vessels were taken. The French government was, however, surprised, and as Talleyrand at last signified a disposition to negotiate, Adams despatched three envoys to France, who began a new negotiation.

3. During the agitation of the question, the number of foreign refugees in the country, many of them

2. What was Congress doing ? What attempt was made ? What did Congress do in regard to France ? What law was passed ? Who was chosen to command the army ? What took place at sea ? Who offered to treat, and what was done ?

bold political schemers, and the violence of the Republican papers, who covered with abuse every act of the government, led to the passage, in 1798, of the two celebrated Alien and Sedition acts. The former authorized the President to order out of the country any alien suspected of conspiring against the peace of the state; the latter made a treasonable offence, all words, speeches or printed matter tending to bring the government into contempt. Owing to the violent assault made on them, these acts produced a feeling of great hostility to the government, although both had numerous precedents. They were, however, too liable to abuse to be relished by the people, and were soon repealed.

4. The country now experienced a loss in the death of Washington. While riding around his farm he took cold, and an inflammation of the throat, mismanaged by his physicians, carried him off in a few days. He expired at his residence at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of December, 1799, at the age of 68. Congress was then in session at Philadelphia: on receiving the mournful intelligence it adjourned, and on the following day Mr. Marshall announced the confirmation of the tidings, and after a brief but comprehensive view of Washington's career and services, moved that a joint committee should be appointed, "to devise the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the man, first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

8. What two acts were passed in 1798? What led to them? What was their nature? What did they produce?

4. What loss did the country experience? Describe his illness. What

The Senate concurred, and it was resolved to have a funeral oration delivered before both Houses; that the President should recommend the people to put on the badge of mourning; and that at the federal city a monument should be erected in his honor, designed to commemorate the great events of his military and political life. On the 26th of December, Henry Lee pronounced the eulogy on Washington before both Houses of Congress, and on the next anniversary of the hero's birth-day, similar eulogies were pronounced throughout the country, by Hamilton, Ames, Bishop Carroll, and other eminent men of every class. Amid this general grief and respect, a few fanatics alone reviled the great departed; their clamor soon ceased, and Washington has ever since risen higher and higher in the esteem and respect of his countrymen.

5. Washington was not one of those dazzling meteors which have astonished and terrified the world by a brilliant, but destructive course. Calm and unruffled in temper, prudent and steadfast in his resolutions, prompt and decisive in action, he was never elated by success, nor dejected by failure. Though oftener defeated than victorious, he was never routed, and thus ever formidable to his antagonists, brought the revolutionary war to a triumphant close. As President of the Convention he was one of the founders of the Constitution, and on the establishment of the new government, organized it amid an opposition almost

was done in Congress? Who pronounced his eulogy in Congress? Who elsewhere?

5. What was Washington's character? How was he in battle? How as a statesman?

u paralleled. His full confidence in that form of government has been justified by its triumphant career of more than half a century, but in our thankfulness for its blessings, we should remember that Washington established it on a firm footing only at the loss of his deserved popularity.

6. The site of a federal district had been selected by Washington on the Potomac, and public buildings erected. In 1800, the seat of government was accordingly removed from Philadelphia to Washington, and though the destruction of two public buildings by fire caused some hesitation, a city was soon built up, which has ever since remained the capital of the republic.

One of the first acts of Congress there, in 1800, was to form into a territorial government, under the name of Indiana, what is now Indiana and Illinois. Vincennes became the capital, and William Henry Harrison, whose modification of the land-law had just opened the West to emigrants, was appointed governor. To this territory and to Mississippi also, a legislature was granted.

The war with France, notwithstanding the negotiations, was still carried on at sea, and chiefly in the West Indies: there the American commodore, Truxtun, in the Constellation, thrice engaged French frigates, and compelled them to yield. The French privateers were swept off the seas, and the pride of

6. What had been selected by Washington? What was done? What was one of the first acts of Congress in 1800? Who was appointed governor? How did he benefit the West? What other territory obtained a legislature? What took place at sea? What was the result? When was peace made?

France effectually checked. She was, therefore, now disposed to abate her demands, and peace was made September 30th, 1800.

7. A new election now approached. Adams, by renewing the negotiations with France, had sacrificed his popularity, and was defeated. The anti-federalists voted for Jefferson and Burr, who received an equal number, for it was not then the rule to vote for a President and Vice-President, and the neglect to omit one ballot for Burr gave him an equal number. In consequence of this, the choice devolved on the House of Representatives, and here Burr used every art to secure the presidential chair for himself; the federalists were indeed inclined to defeat Jefferson, but the influence of Hamilton finally secured his election, not, however, before thirty-five ballotings had taken place. A reorganization of the United States Courts was the last act of Adams's administration: he retired from office, and without waiting the arrival of his successor, returned to his native State.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, 1801-1809.

8. Jefferson began a new order of things. The policy of Washington and Adams was now to be abandoned, and the republican ideas so long upheld by Jefferson, to be tested by practice. The war with France had been closed. Troubles still continued with the Barbary states; the United States enjoyed perfect

7. How had Adams lost popularity? Who were the candidates of the anti-federalists? What curious circumstance occurred? What attempt did Burr make? What was the last act of Adams's administration?

8. What was now to be abandoned? What was the state of the ocean?

peace, and a steady emigration of industrious settlers, chiefly from Ireland, enabled it to advance rapidly to a state of great prosperity.

One of Jefferson's first acts was to send out Dale with a fleet to the Mediterranean, to chastise Tripoli. Finding two Tripolitan vessels near Gibraltar, he blockaded them, and on the 6th of August, 1801, took another. An additional squadron was soon after sent out, but owing to a misunderstanding, the gallant Truxton was dismissed from the navy.

9. Ohio had so rapidly advanced that on the 30th of April, 1802, a convention was, under the authority of Congress, assembled to form a constitution; and a very liberal one having been adopted, it became a State on the 1st of March, 1803. The Southern territory of the United States next demanded attention. Georgia ceded all her claims to Mississippi territory, which was now completely organized, and promised to fill up with settlers, especially on the Mississippi, when it was discovered that Spain had, by a secret treaty of the 1st of October, 1800, re-ceded Louisiana to France. On intelligence of this, the Spanish intendant in 1802 refused to allow American vessels to deposite merchandise at New Orleans, in spite of the treaty of 1783. The whole valley of the Mississippi became excited to the highest degree, and many proposed to invade Louisiana and take it by force. Congress at once authorized the President to call out an

try? What was Jefferson's first act? Who was sent out? What did Dale do? Who was dismissed?

9. What occurred in Ohio? What was the nature of its constitution? What state ceded territory to the United States? What was now dis-

army of 80,000 men, and put at his disposal \$2,000,000 to purchase if possible the island of Orleans, and the free navigation of the river. At the same time the navy was increased, but so trifling was it that the republican party, a moment before enthusiastic friends of France, proposed a close alliance with England.

10. Livingston, the American minister at the Court of France, had in vain endeavored to prevent the cession, and finding this hopeless, opened a negotiation for the purchase of New Orleans, and the adjacent tracts on the Mississippi. This plan met with little success, till it was evident that another European war was imminent. Then Bonaparte requested Livingston to make an offer for all Louisiana: this had never been contemplated, and was not provided for in Livingston's instructions, or those of Monroe, who now came out. The urgency of the case admitted no delay, and the American envoys offered ten millions of dollars; the French government at first asked twenty, but having descended to twelve, the bargain was closed, and a treaty signed on the 30th of April, 1803.

This treaty securing to the inhabitants their liberty, property, and religion, ceded all Louisiana, as it had been held by Spain. Thus, for a trifling sum, the immense territory west of the Mississippi was annexed to the United States: the cession was, however, so

covered? What did the Spanish intendant do? What occurred in the valley of the Mississippi? What did Congress do?

10. What had Livingston done? What offer was finally made him? What did Livingston propose? When and on what terms was the bargain finally made? What were its provisions? Was this act provided for in the constitution?

masty, that no boundaries were set forth, and the western limit of the United States became a matter of speculation. This act of Jefferson's administration being something unprovided for by the constitution, convinced him of the necessity of a liberal construction of that instrument, and like most opposition leaders raised to power, he soon found that he must use as precedents what he had furiously denounced.

11. When Congress assembled the treaty was confirmed, and money voted to carry it out; and on the 20th of December, 1803, Lausat, as commissioner for France, formally yielded New Orleans to the American commissioners, Wilkinson and Claiborne. The latter was appointed by Congress to the supreme and sole government of the new province, an absolute power entirely unparalleled in our history. In the following year, however, a new act was passed, by which Louisiana was divided into two parts, separated by the 33d degree of latitude. The southern part, called the District of Orleans, was now organized, the administration of affairs being committed to a governor and council, appointed by the President. Courts, both federal and territorial, were also established, and preparations made for raising it as soon as prudent to the rank of a State, in conformity with the treaty of cession. The northern part, of which St. Louis was the chief settlement, was styled the District of Louisiana, and for the moment was made dependent on Indiana

11. How did Congress act in regard to the treaty? When was the territory surrendered? How was the government organized? When was Louisiana divided, and how? What was the southern part called? What the upper? On what was it made dependent? What was the idea as to this?

territory. The first idea of the General Government was to reserve this for the Indians, and the claims of the tribes to the country east of the Mississippi were to be extinguished.

12. The operations against Tripoli continued; in May one of the piratical cruisers was taken, another blown up, but no decisive blow was struck. Preble at last arrived with the new squadron, and capturing two Morocco vessels, compelled the emperor of that country to make peace. He then sailed to Tripoli; but unfortunately about this time an accident changed the aspect of affairs. The frigate Philadelphia, sent into the harbor of Tripoli to reconnoitre, struck upon a rock, and being surrounded by the enemy's gun-boats, was compelled to surrender on the 31st of October, 1803. In the following February, however, Preble again appeared, and capturing a small cruiser, sent Decatur in it to destroy the Philadelphia. That officer, having by a stratagem got alongside, boarded her killed twenty of the Tripolitans on the deck, drove the rest overboard, fired the vessel, and without the loss of a man pulled out of the bay. During the summer, Preble also bombarded the town, and destroyed many of the enemy's gun-boats.

13. Such was the position of affairs at home and abroad, when Jefferson's first term drew to a close. The republican party still maintained its ascendancy, and put forward as their candidates for the next elec-

12. What was done at Tripoli? What frigate was lost, and when? When did Preble again appear? What did Decatur effect?

13. What was the position of parties? Who were put forward as candidates? What did Congress do in 1805? What strange expedition took

tion, Jefferson, President, and George Clinton for Vice-President, Burr having, by his many corruptions and his duel with Hamilton, lost all his political rank. The ensuing Congress in 1805 organized Orleans as a territory of the first class, with a legislature, and Louisiana and Michigan as of the second class, under a governor and judges.

In the Mediterranean a strange proceeding occurred. The Dey of Tripoli was a usurper, who had expelled his brother Hamet. The latter having gained the friendship of Eaton, the United States Consul at Tunis, formed a plan for recovering his throne. Having obtained seventy men from Preble's fleet, Eaton and Hamet set out from Alexandria, and in April, 1805, took Derne by assault. Other victories followed; the usurper, defeated in two successive engagements, offered terms of peace which the agent of the United States, to the mortification of Hamet and Eaton accepted, and peace was concluded on the payment of a considerable sum as ransom for the prisoners.

14. Troubles now occurred on the frontier of Florida, and the policy of England in impressing American seamen, and even attempting to take men from ships of war, prepared for a collision between the two governments; and at the same time the decrees of both France and England, with regard to neutral vessels, menaced all American commerce. These decrees led to the passage of the non-importation act in 1806, which prohibited the importation of English

place in Africa? What city did Eaton take, and when? What was the final result?

14. Where did troubles occur? What outrages did England commit?

manufactures. While the country was thus involved abroad, Colonel Burr, now desperate as a politician, formed a plan for separating the Western States and territories, and forming a new government, and proceeding to the conquest of Mexico. Having made overtures to General Wilkinson, then in command of the United States troops on the Mississippi, that officer put New Orleans in a state of defence, and informed the President of the plot. Burr did not even then despair, but being surrounded, he at last surrendered to the Governor of Mississippi territory. He was subsequently tried for treason, but was acquitted.

15. The "Berlin Decree" of Napoleon, and the British Orders in Council were now in full operation, both condemning neutral ships to forfeiture; but Pinckney had nearly negotiated at London a treaty, highly advantageous to the United States, as matters stood. Jefferson at once, however, declared his intention to reject it, and the treaty was, almost without examination, rejected in 1806. Four years of vexatious and commercial embarrassment, and nearly three years of useless, ruinous war, were the results of this undemocratic step of Jefferson.

While the federal government thus broke off negotiations, Berkeley, the English admiral off the coast of the United States, ordered the officers under him to search the United States frigate Chesapeake, for some English deserters said to be on board. Ignor-

What act was passed? What did Burr attempt? To whom did he make overtures? To whom did he surrender? What was the result of his trial?

15. What were now in operation? What did Pinckney obtain? How did Jefferson act? What was the result? What order was given by the

rant of this, the Chesapeake sailed from Norfolk in June, 1807, totally unprepared for action, and was at once hailed by the English man-of-war, the Leopard. Captain Barron refusing to degrade his country by submitting to the search, the Chesapeake was fired into, until she was a perfect wreck, and many of her crew killed. So sudden was the attack that Barron could not clear for action, and seeing no alternative lowered his flag. The English commander then boarded the Chesapeake, and took off four men, one of whom was afterwards hanged.

16. Such a violation of all the laws of civilized nations provoked a furious spirit of resentment. Jefferson issued a proclamation forbidding English ships of war to enter the harbors of the United States, and despatched instructions to the minister at London. The English government at once disavowed the act, and removed Berkeley from his command, but an attempt being made to obtain a relinquishment of the right of impressment, the English government drew back, and as the last treaty had been rejected, refused to re-open negotiations. Jefferson had hastened matters to a crisis, but was not prepared for war; he had no army, and had ever been so hostile to the navy, that it was yet of little account. Unable otherwise to resist the Orders in Council, he proposed an Embargo, by which all vessels were forbidden to leave American ports. This was taken up in secret session, and passed

English admiral? What vessel was first stopped, and by whom? What ensued?

16. What did this provoke? How did Jefferson act? What did the English government do? What was Jefferson's position? What did he propose? What was the effect of this? When was it repealed?

in December, 1807, without discussion, although it involved the happiness and livelihood of thousands. As soon as it became known it excited violent opposition, and New England especially took ground against it. Its operation soon showed its futility. England and France remained unaffected by it, America alone suffering. At last after stormy debates it was repealed in March, 1809, at the last session under Jefferson.

17. About the same time Illinois territory was organized, comprising what is now Illinois and Wisconsin; and Jefferson closing his career by a violent seizure of some property of Livingston's at New Orleans, retired from the Presidency. He was a man of philanthropical ideas, more of a speculator than a man of action, yet arbitrary, and often tyrannical in his proceedings. He long continued to be the head of the republican party, and is still revered as its chief. As the public voice refused more than two terms to any President, he declined a re-nomination, and James Madison was put forward as the candidate for President, and George Clinton as Vice-President. They were elected almost unanimously.

17. What territory was organized? What did it comprise? How did Jefferson close his career? Who was put forward as candidates? How was Madison elected?



CHAPTER XI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

JAMES MADISON, 1809-1817.

1. The new President was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1809, and continued to a great extent the Jefferson policy. Anxious to escape the embarrassment of the embargo and non-importation acts, he began secret negotiations with Erskine, and obtained a promise to repeal the Orders in Council so far as they related to the United States. The English government, however, disavowed Erskine's acts, and matters remained as before.

In the early part of 1809, a case which had long been pending, called the Olmstead case, arising out of a capture during the Revolutionary war, involved the Federal government in a contest with the State of Pennsylvania. The Governor of the State ordered out the militia, and placed a guard, under the command of Captain Bright, to prevent the United States marshal from serving the process; the marshal on his side called for 2000 men to aid him, and the gov-

1. What policy did Madison adopt? What did he begin? How did the British government act? What case came on in 1809? What is the history of this affair? How did it result?

ernor finding matters serious, yielded, but this did not end the matter. Bright and his militia-men were arrested and tried for resisting the marshal, and after a long trial convicted. The whole affair thus resulted in confirming the powers of the General Government.

2. In 1811, the territory of Orleans was at last made into a State, under the name of Louisiana, though not without great opposition on the part of the federalists, who denied Congress any power to create States out of newly acquired territory. The former district of Louisiana took the name of Missouri. An application was also made to make Mississippi a State, but it was deferred, owing to the necessity of arranging the claims of Georgia. Meanwhile negotiations were going on with France and England, to obtain a repeal of their decrees and orders so hostile to neutral nations, but though France repealed her decrees in November, 1810, England still retained her Orders in Council, and continued her depredations on American commerce. The American navy was unable to defend the immense number of ships against the English cruisers, but just as the affair of the Chesapeake had been settled, a new affair occurred, not unlike it in many respects. On the 16th of May, 1811, the frigate President, pursued for a time by the English sloop-of-war Little Belt, soon became the pursuer, and on coming up hailed. Some misunderstanding ensued, and the President, as zealous of national honor as the Leopard had

3. What state was admitted in 1811? Who opposed it? What name did the district take? What other state sought admission? Why was it deferred? When did France repeal her orders? How did England act? What took place in May, 1811?

been, prepared for action. In a moment the vessels engaged, and after one or two broadsides, the Little Belt had all her guns silenced, eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, in fact, was little better than a wreck. The President hailed again, and this time was answered. In the morning he sent down to offer assistance, which the Little Belt declined, and sailed off as best she could.

3. A new war was brooding over the West. Tecumseh was a Shawnee chief, famous alike for bravery and eloquence; his brother, commonly called the Prophet, was a medicine man; they were both enemies to the whites, and went from tribe to tribe, arousing all to renounce whiskey, and all European goods, as well as to reject Christianity and civilization. Being joined by the Wyandots, of Sandusky, Tecumseh was evidently preparing for war; when General Harrison, then Governor of Indiana territory, invited him to a conference at Vincennes; but Tecumseh behaved with such insolence that Harrison broke off the conference, and prepared to meet him in the field. In November, with a small force of regulars, he advanced against the Prophet's town on the Wabash. After some parleying with the Prophet, who acted in Tecumseh's absence, Harrison encamped for the night on the Tippecanoe River, but was suddenly attacked early on the morning of the 7th of November, by the Indians. He maintained order, however, and after a severe

8. Who was Tecumseh? What were he and his brother plotting? Who first joined him? What did Harrison do? What happened on the 7th of November? What was the result of the battle of Tippecanoe? Why did Harrison fall back?

fight, repelled the enemy, who immediately abandoned their town. In this attack the Indians lost 40 killed and a great many wounded. Harrison was indeed victorious, but his loss was so severe that he fell back to Vincennes.

4. War with England or France could not be delayed: in fact Madison, re-elected President in 1812, with Elbridge Gerry as Vice-President, had no alternative. Without any preparation, military or naval, Congress finally on the 18th of June, 1812, declared war against Great Britain. Never had an unfortunate country been plunged into an unequal and perilous contest under more untoward circumstances. Still a popular feeling was excited in favor of the war, and at Baltimore several opponents of the step, one of whom was a Revolutionary officer, were killed by the mob. Lower Canada had always been the point of attack; but it was now resolved to invade the Upper Province. Hull, Governor of Michigan territory, was ordered to enter it. After losing his military stores, which the English who first heard of the war had seized, he marched into Canada on the 12th of July, 1812. Tecumseh now joined the English, and early in August cut off, near the river Raisin, a body of 200 men, sent to open the road. General Hull, thus unable to obtain supplies, resolved to fall back to Detroit, and dispatched Colonel Miller with 600 men to open a road for his convoy. General Proc-

4. What was the result of the election in 1812? What did Congress do in June 1812? What were the preparations for war? What occurred at Baltimore? How did Madison propose to begin the war? Who was ordered to invade it? What did he lose? What happened on Raisin river?

tor had by this time joined Tecumseh, and posted himself strongly at Maguago. Here Miller attacked them gallantly, and after an obstinate struggle forced their position. This was his whole success, for he failed in his main object, and Hull was still encircled. Meanwhile General Brock, Governor of Upper Canada, reached Malden with new troops, and taking command of the English forces crossed over, and called on Hull to surrender. The American General refused, but just as the armies were on the point of engaging, he agreed to capitulate, and on the 16th of August, surrendered to Brock his army, with Detroit and all Michigan territory.

5. Negotiations had continued, and an armistice was soon agreed to, but England still clung to her right to stop American vessels and impress all whom an English officer should suspect to be British subjects. How flagrantly this abuse had been carried on may be judged from the fact that there were, by Lord Castlereagh's admission, 1,700 bona fide American citizens, serving against their will in the British navy. In fact the number was at least 3,000, and 2,500 of them refusing to fight, were confined with every ill treatment in Dartmouth prison in England.

6. The administration, slowly preparing, collected troops on the frontier at various points. General Dearborn had by great exertion assembled on Lake

What did Hull resolve to do? What did he send Colonel Miller to do? What occurred at Maguago? Who now appeared before Detroit? Where did Hull capitulate?

5. What was agreed to? How many American citizens had been seized for the British navy? How many did the British admit? How many were confined for refusing to fight?

Champlain an army of 3,000 regulars and 2,000 militia; 2,000 militia were also stationed at Sackett's Harbor, and 6,000 more under General Van Rensselaer at Buffalo, while Commodore Chauncey on Lake Ontario, fitting out a flotilla, drove the British fleet into Kingston, and endeavored to form a navy to control the lake, and Elliot sought in like manner to gain the command of Lake Erie. The English, however, first took the field, and opened the campaign by attacking Ogdensburg with 700 men, on the 4th of October, 1812; a short and decisive action followed, in which they were gallantly repulsed by General Brown and his militia. On the 13th of the same month, General Van Rensselaer attempted to cross the Niagara and take post at Queenstown; his first detachment, 600 strong, under Colonel Van Rensselaer, after much loss effected a landing, and storming a battery drove the English into a stone house. General Brock endeavored by a sally to drive the Americans back, but was mortally wounded. Meanwhile the other divisions crossed slowly, and some hours after, a sudden attack by a corps of Indians threw the American militia into confusion, but they were rallied by Lieutenant-Colonel Scott, and the detachment held its ground. Van Rensselaer in vain endeavored to induce his militia to cross; they refused, and those on the Canada side, unsupported by the rest, kept their position till General Sheaffe, the English commander,

6. What had General Dearborn done? What force was stationed at Sackett's Harbor? What force had Van Rensselaer at Buffalo? What did Commodore Chauncey effect? Who opened the campaign, and how? What was the result? What did Van Rensselaer attempt? Describe the battle of Queenstown? Who was mortally wounded? Who compelled

came up with a fresh body of troops, they then fell back, and being thrown into confusion were compelled to surrender after some loss. By this ill-managed affair, the Americans lost in killed, wounded and prisoners at least a thousand men, while the English loss did not exceed a hundred. Disgusted at this reverse, General Van Rensselaer threw up the command, and was succeeded by Smythe of Virginia.

7. The conduct of the administration now displayed the greatest imbecility; the war department planned no campaign, raised no army, but investing the generals in command of the several divisions with discretionary powers, left all to them, and at the same time armies of militia were in the field without any orders at all. In consequence, the year was spent in fruitless marches and countermarches, or in unimportant skirmishes. Thus Dearborn, near Lake Champlain, occupied St. Regis in October, but failed in an operation on La Colle, and lost a detachment at Salmon River in the ensuing month. Smythe, at Niagara, issued pompous addresses, and sent a detachment across the river, which after some skirmishes retreated, leaving a part to surrender to the English. In the west, Taylor repulsed an Indian attack on Fort Harrison, and Governor Edwards destroyed some Indian towns above Peoria, but the main army under General Harrison effected nothing.

8. The navy, hitherto depreciated and underrated,

the Americans to surrender? What was the American loss? What did Van Rensselaer do?

7. What did the Administration display? How was the year spent? What were Dearborn's movements? What did Smythe effect? What did Taylor and Edwards effect?

alone maintained the American name, at first by stealth, for they put to sea to avoid orders from Washington. The Essex captured a transport bearing troops, and subsequently, the Alert, a British sloop of war. On the 19th of August the Constitution, Captain Isaac Hull, closed with the English frigate Guerriere of somewhat inferior size, off the coast of Massachusetts. A running fight ensued, but after a spirited action of about 30 minutes, the Constitution assumed a raking position and so disabled the Guerriere, that she struck her flag, having lost one third of her force. Hull finding her a perfect wreck, blew her up, and returned to Boston. Rodgers next sailed out to cruise with several vessels, one of which, the United States, Captain Decatur, gave chase to the Macedonian, off the Azores, and after a brisk cannonade, closed with her on the 25th of October, and soon compelled the British commander to strike. In this engagement the Macedonian had a hundred killed and wounded, the United States only twelve. The President, another of the vessels made several rich captures, and the Argus made one while pursued by a British fleet.

9. Just a week before this, the American sloop of war Wasp, Captain Jones, cruising off the coast of North Carolina, gave chase to a British merchant fleet convoyed by the brig Frolic. The Frolic prepared for action, but the Wasp, though severely han-

8. How had the navy been treated? What did it now do? What did the Essex capture? Describe the battle between the Constitution and the Guerriere. Describe the battle between the United States and the Macedonian. What did the President effect?

9. What success had Captain Jones in the Wasp? What happened

dled, at last got a raking position, and boarded; so desperate had the fight been that not twenty men on the Frolic were unhurt, and the decks were slippery with blood. Before the Wasp could be put in a condition to make sail, she and her prize were captured by the Poictiers, a British seventy-four.

A new spirit was infused into the people. Elated by this success, privateers were fitted out in great numbers, and the British commerce was plundered as that of the United States had been prior to the war. This produced no less astonishment than mortification in England, where the appearance of a rival on the ocean alarmed their national pride, and their contempt for America gave place to prudent fears.

10. The land operations, renewed at the close of the year, were as unfavorable as ever to the American cause. In the West, General Winchester, ordered by Harrison to occupy the Maumee rapids, pushed on to relieve Frenchtown on Raisin River, then held by the English. He succeeded in driving them out, but encamping in the open field was suddenly attacked on the 10th of January, 1813, by Proctor, who crossed on the ice from Malden. Taken by surprise, the Americans were soon dispersed, and Winchester himself having been taken prisoner, agreed to surrender his whole force. Proctor then returned to Malden, leaving the prisoners and wounded at the mercy of his Indians, who massacred most of them.

after the fight? What were now fitted out? What effect did all this produce in England?

10. What was Winchester sent to do? What further steps did he take? Describe the battle of Frenchtown. How did Harrison act on

Harrison, on hearing of Winchester's movement saw its imprudence, and pressed on in all haste, but arrived at the Maumee only to learn of his total defeat. He at once threw up Fort Meigs, at the rapids, and resolved to hold that position at all hazards, despairing of being able to assume the defensive. Madison was now re-elected President, and at once set about reorganizing the war department, the more necessary, as English fleets blockaded New York, the Delaware, and Chesapeake, carrying on a marauding system of plunder and petty larceny.

11. Proctor meanwhile renewed the war in the West. On the 28th of April, 1813, he laid siege to Fort Meigs, with an army of 2,000 English and Indians, and threw up batteries on both sides of the river. General Greene Clay, of Kentucky, at the head of 1,200 men soon arrived to relieve the fort, and took one of the batteries, but neglecting to spike the cannon, and push into the fort, they were surprised and nearly all taken. Harrison had, meanwhile, made a sortie and taken the battery on the southern bank. In spite of this success, Proctor began to fear an attack, and his Indians, content as usual with one engagement, began to leave the camp, so that he was compelled to retire.

12. The army in New York were also in motion to invade Canada. Early in May an American force,

hearing of Winchester's advance? Where did he throw up a fort? What was the President doing? In what position where the chief ports?

11. Who renewed the war in the West? When did he besiege Fort Meigs, and with what force? Who marched to its relief? What was the result of his expedition? What compelled Proctor to retire?

12. What did the New York army attempt? Who landed before

under Pike, landed to attack Toronto in Upper Canada, the great depot of the British military stores. Pike at once assaulted the English works, and routing the enemy was entering the place, when a magazine blew up, killing and wounding 200 men, among them Pike himself. In the confusion which ensued, Sheaffe, the British general, with all his force escaped, losing, however, his baggage, books and papers. The American commander, Chauncey, having destroyed some vessels on the stocks, and burned the Parliament-house, where an American scalp had been found suspended, returned with a large quantity of ammunition and stores, to Sackett's Harbor.

Having obtained reinforcements, Chauncey sailed to the Niagara, and on the 27th of May a landing was effected on the British side, the light troops under Scott and Forsyth leading the way. General Vincent, the English commander, finding Fort George untenable, blew up his magazines and retreated to Burlington heights, pursued by the Americans. Instead of advancing himself with all his force, General Dearborn sent on Winder with one brigade, and subsequently Chandler with another. The latter taking command, resolved to attack in the morning, and encamped carelessly.

Taking advantage of this, Vincent surprised him by night, and dashing into the camp took both Ameri-

Toronto? What did he do? What accident happened? What loss did it cause? What did it enable Sheaffe to do? What did the Americans destroy? What was Chauncey's next step? Who landed, and where? What did the English general do? What error did Dearborn commit? What error did Chandler commit? What did Vincent do? What success had he?

can generals, and about 100 men prisoners, and retired with them and five pieces of artillery, leaving, however, about 100 dead and wounded on the field. After this, Dearborn, recalling the detachment, lay inactive.

13. As soon as it became known that Chauncey had sailed from Sackett's Harbor, Prevost proceeded from Kingston at the head of 700 men to attack it. Backus, the American commander, had only 400 men, but General Brown came up with some volunteers, and took command. The volunteers broke, but the regulars finally drove the English to their ships, each party losing about 150 men, among whom, on the American side, were Colonel Backus and Colonel Mills of the volunteers. Prevost had, however, effected his object, for at the first alarm the Americans destroyed their magazines, with all the stores taken at Toronto.

While Dearborn lay idle, Colonel Bishop with an English force encircled his camp, occupied Fort Erie, and crossing over to Black Rock on the 11th of June, dispersed the militia, and destroyed the cannon and provisions there. A party of regulars, militia and Indians from Buffalo now came up, and a second engagement occurred, in which Bishop was killed, and his troops compelled to make a hasty retreat. Dearborn was not, however, relieved, and to open communications sent Colonel Boerstler with 600 men to

18. What place did Prevost attack? Who was the American commander? Who came up and took command? What was the result of the battle? What did the Americans destroy in the confusion? What did Colonel Bishop effect on the Niagara? What was the result of the second battle? What was the battle of Beaver Dam? Who now superseded Dearborn?

attack one of the British posts; but that officer having, on the 23d of June, entered a difficult pass called Beaver Dam, was attacked in front and rear by Lieutenant Fitzgibbon, and believing himself surrounded, at last surrendered. In consequence of these disasters, Wilkinson was appointed to succeed Dearborn.

14. The Americans, so often victorious at sea, were now to experience a reverse. The Chesapeake, then at Boston, had been given to Captain Lawrence, and that commander at once sailed out to meet the Shannon, which had several times challenged the American vessels in the harbor. With a new crew, incomplete equipments, and only a part of his officers, Lawrence was not in a condition to fight, and after a furious action, was himself mortally wounded, and the British boarded the Chesapeake almost without opposition. The Chesapeake had 48 killed and 98 wounded, the Shannon 22 killed and 56 wounded. This victory was celebrated with the greatest rejoicings in England, so important had it become to defeat even one American vessel.

15. The Essex, Captain Porter, another American vessel, was at this time in the Pacific protecting the national whalers, and capturing British ships: he also took some Spanish vessels, cruising against American ships, under orders from the Viceroy of Peru. The Argus sloop of war alarmed England by capturing twenty-one merchantmen in the English channel,

14. Where did the Americans now meet a reverse? Who commanded the Chesapeake, and in what state was she? What vessel did he engage? What was the result?

15. Where was the Essex, and how engaged? What did the Argus

and the fear did not abate till the Argus was taken by the Pelican, early in August. On the 3d of September, the Enterprise, after an engagement of 40 minutes, took the British brig Boxer, off Menhagen, near the coast of Maine. In both these engagements the American commanders were killed, and in the latter the English commander also. Most of the other American vessels were blockaded, and the British fleet commanded the Chesapeake, where it still continued its ravages.

16. Towards the end of July, Proctor finding that Perry was endeavoring to gain the command of Lake Erie, again proceeded from Malden and invested Fort Meigs, this time commanded by Clay. Failing to draw Clay out, he invested Fort Stevenson, a small post occupied by Lieutenant Croghan, with one cannon and 160 men. Croghan had been ordered to retreat, but finding it too late, he resolved to hold out. On the 2d of August, Proctor attacked the place with great fury, but in spite of all his efforts was repulsed with great loss. Proctor now began to fear a sudden attack from Harrison, and retreated to Malden. Harrison was actually in the field with his regulars and mounted riflemen from Kentucky: but the decisive blow was struck on the lake.

Perry had equipped at Erie two war brigs, and had seven smaller vessels, mounting in all 55 guns. With this flotilla, he now sailed out on the 2d of Au-

capture? What befell it? Describe the engagement between the Enterprise and Boxer.

16. What did Proctor do in July? What was the result? What did he then do? What were Croghan's orders? How did he act? What did Proctor do? What was Harrison doing? Where was the decisive blow

gust, and near Malden came up with Barclay's flotilla, consisting of the ships Detroit and Queen Charlotte, with four smaller vessels, carrying in all 63 guns. Barclay at first avoided a fight, but at last, on the 10th, sailed out to meet Perry, and soon disabled the Lawrence, Perry's flag-ship. Perry at once went on board the Niagara, and having by his manœuvring opened the British line, sailed through, pouring in broadsides as he passed: his other vessels followed, and such was the effect of their guns, that all the British vessels struck. This battle of Lake Erie lasted three hours, and the loss on each side was about 150.

17. Master of the Lake, Perry at once transported Harrison's army past Malden, which Proctor had abandoned, and landed them at Detroit. After reorganizing the territorial government here, Harrison with the mounted Kentuckians crossed into Canada in pursuit of Proctor, and on the 4th of October, captured all his stores and ammunition. Proctor now faced and drew up near the Moravian town, with his left on the river Thames, and his right, consisting of Tecumseh and his Indians, resting on a swamp. The Kentuckians under Johnson charged in a solid column, and broke the English line; Proctor and a few escaped, the rest of his troops threw down their arms and surrendered; the Indians alone maintained the

struck? What was Perry's force? Where did he meet Barclay's flotilla? Of what did it consist? When did Barclay sail out? Describe the battle. How long did it last, and what was the loss?

17. What did Perry do after the battle? What was Harrison's first care? What did he then do? What took place on the 4th of October? What did Proctor do? What was his disposition for battle? Who led

fight, but when Tecumseh fell, they fled, leaving 50 dead on the field—more than the whole American loss in killed and wounded. Harrison now left Cass with a garrison at Detroit, and with the rest of his regulars proceeded to Buffalo to aid the operations there.

18. Wilkinson, appointed to command the northern army, found at Sackett's Harbor one third of the soldiers sick, all undisciplined, few officers and no transports: the army on Lake Champlain was commanded by Hampton, who would not co-operate with him. In this position Wilkinson, sick himself, wished to resign, but Armstrong, the Secretary of War, soon arrived and took the command. It was proposed to attack Montreal, but Hampton, contrary to orders, advanced alone, and on the 21st of October, his van was attacked at Chateaugay by a small band of Canadians under Salaberry, and supposing a large force in front, he retired into New York. Wilkinson meanwhile descended the St. Lawrence with 7,000 infantry in batteaux, and 500 horse on shore. The English from Kingston beset his rear, and a confused action, called the battle of Chrystler's farm; resulted in the loss of General Covington and 340 men killed and wounded. Finding now that Hampton absolutely refused to co-operate, Wilkinson abandoned the campaign, and retired into winter quarters, nothing at all having been effected.

the charge? Who maintained their ground? What was the loss? What were Harrison's next steps?

18. Who was now appointed to command the northern army? How did he find affairs? Who commanded on Lake Champlain? What did Wilkinson ask? Who took command? What did Hampton do? What was the battle of Chateaugay? What did Wilkinson do? Who assailed his rear? What battle ensued? What was the American loss? Why did Wilkinson abandon his plan?

19. Harrison, dissatisfied with the state of affairs, soon returned to the West, leaving the command of the Niagara frontier to General McClure. The American force was chiefly militia, and when their time expired they left, refusing to stay even for large bounties. Unable to hold his ground, McClure destroyed Fort George and returned to New York State, having first wantonly set fire to the town of Newark. Provoked at this, Prevost, the English commander, crossed the river, took Fort Niagara, put the garrison to the sword, and burned every village up to Niagara Falls, while another detachment burned Black Rock and Buffalo, and destroyed a part of Perry's fleet. This conduct Prevost justified in a proclamation, deprecating it, however, and offering to conduct the war on more humane principles, if the Americans would pursue a similar course. And for all the pillaging and incendiary expeditions of the war, England gave the same excuse.

20. It was not in the north alone that the Indians aided the English cause by attacking the whites. In August, 1813, the Creeks began hostilities, and a party under Wetherford, a half-breed, surprised Fort Mimms, on the west side of Alabama, and killed some four hundred who had taken refuge there. The War Department had already called out the militia of the neighboring States, and in October, General Jackson, after throwing up Fort Strother on the Coosa,

19. Why did Harrison retire? Who was left in command? Of what did his force consist? What did they refuse to do? What did McClure? Of what wanton act was he guilty? How did Proctor retaliate?

20. What other Indians took the field? Who surprised Fort Mimms, and how many did he kill? What did the War Department do? Who

pushed into the Hickory ground, took one village by surprise, and on the 2d of November, in the bloody battle of Tallushatchee, killed 200 of the Creeks, with slight loss on his side. Five days after he again brought them to action near the friendly village of Talladega, where 290 were slain on the spot. Meanwhile another Tennessee detachment, under General Cocke, surprised the Hillabee towns on the Coosa, and a Georgia column under General Floyd advanced against Autose, a large Creek town near the junction of the Coosa and Tallapoosa. It was considered impregnable, but the Georgians carried it with slight loss, killing 200 of the enemy, and several prominent chiefs. The Mississippi column in a similar way routed the Alabamas, near the mouth of the Cahawba; but as these four armies effected no junction, the war was not yet brought to a decisive point.

21. The Creeks now rallied, and, taking the offensive, marched against Floyd, but on hearing of Jackson's approach, attacked him, on the 21st of January, with such spirit and pertinacity, that, though repulsed, they compelled him to fall back to Fort Strother. Three days after they renewed the attack with such vigor as almost to rout the volunteers, who were saved only by the intrepidity of the regulars. Although their loss had been considerable in these two engagements, the Red Sticks, or revolted Creeks, on the 27th,

first entered the Creek territory? What fort did he erect? What battle did he fight on the 2d of November? What battle on the 7th? What towns did Cocke take? On what town did the Georgians march? Describe it. How was it taken? Whom did the Mississippi column defeat?

21. How did the Creeks act? Whom did they attack on the 21st of January? What was the result? When did they renew the attack, and

made a furious attack before daylight on Floyd's camp. They were again repelled, but not without a loss on the part of the Georgians, of 18 killed and 132 wounded. Jackson was now reinforced, and after throwing up Fort Williams, directed his march against the Great Horse Shoe Bend, where the Red Sticks were encamped behind a strong breastwork. This the Americans soon stormed, and the Indians, hemmed in on all sides, were cut to pieces after five hours severe fighting; no quarter was given, and 557 of the enemy perished, leaving their women and children captives. Utterly disheartened by these defeats, the Creeks began to treat of peace, and tranquillity was soon established.

22. England had made overtures of peace, and commissioners had been sent out by Madison to negotiate, but the fall of Napoleon, and his exile to Elba, changed the face of affairs. Instead of appointing commissioners to negotiate, the English government sent out large bodies of her veteran troops, now unemployed in Europe. The American navy was now broken up, or shut up in the harbors by the British fleets, which blockaded the whole coast. A large party in the United States had all along opposed the war, and every thing seemed to threaten a destructive series of hostilities. The army on the Niagara frontier had been reorganized, and was under the com-

with what success? Whom did they then attack, and with what result? What was Floyd's loss? Where did the Red Sticks now encamp? Who attacked them here? How long did the battle last? How many Indians fell?

22. Who had opened negotiations? What altered her plans? What was the position of the American navy? Who now commanded the army

mand of Brown as major-general, and Scott and Ripley as brigadiers. On the 2d of July, Brown crossed the river and took Fort Erie; the next day he advanced on General Riall, who was intrenched beyond the Chippewa. Scott drove in the British outposts, and on the 5th Riall, who had crossed the Chippewa and dispersed the American volunteers before him, was driven back over the river by Scott at the point of the bayonet. Riall, who had lost about 500 men, did not await an assault, but abandoned his camp, and throwing a garrison into Fort George, retreated up Lake Ontario.

23. Riall was soon reinforced by Drummond, and in his turn advanced. To prevent the loss of his magazines, Brown sent forward Scott with his brigade and some artillery. About a mile from Chippewa Scott came upon Riall's whole army; it was near sunset, but the armies engaged, and though Scott suffered severely he maintained his ground, awaiting aid, and by a diversion routed the Canadian militia, and captured Riall himself. At nightfall Brown came up with Ripley's brigade, and threw himself in front of Scott; he saw at once the necessity of carrying a British park of artillery, which had so terribly cut up Scott's brigade. Colonel Miller, ordered to storm it, pushed up the hill and drove the men from their guns at the point of the bayonet, exposed the while

at Niagara? Who were under him? How did he begin operations? Who commanded the British? Where was he? Describe the battle of Chippewa. What was Riall's loss? What did he do after the battle?

28. What did Riall do on receiving a reinforcement? Whom did Brown send on to check him? What did Scott come upon, and how did he act? What did he effect by a diversion? When did Brown come up,

to a terrible fire. Ripley had pushed on in front with his brigade, and occupied the hill.

The British now reinforced by Drummond advanced in the darkness to recover their guns, but soon recoiled before the American fire. In half an hour they again advanced, but after a severe conflict, in which Scott took them in flank, they were again driven back. Rallying with desperate energy they made a third attack, in which the bayonets were frequently crossed, but it was all in vain, and Drummond, with the loss of nearly 900 men, at last drew off. The American loss had been severe; Brown and Scott, both wounded, left the field, and Ripley, now in command, after waiting for half an hour, drew back to his camp, unable to carry off the captured cannons.

24. The American army retired to Fort Erie, which Drummond assaulted at midnight on the 15th of August, in three columns. Gaines, who commanded the fort, repulsed two columns, but a third with unexampled boldness effected a lodgment in one bastion, and held it till a quantity of cartridges exploded. Fearing a mine they retreated. In this disastrous affair Drummond lost nearly a thousand men, but he still continued the siege of the fort.

The evident intention of the British to attack some city on the coast, now kept the administration in great alarm, and tardy measures of defence were taken. At last, on the 18th of August, Admiral Cochrane ap-

and what did he do? What feat did Miller achieve? Describe the subsequent attacks of the English. What did Drummond at last do? What was his loss? Why did Ripley fall back?

24. To what fort did the American army retire? When did Drummond attack it? What was the result of the attack? Why did Drum-

peared in the Chesapeake with General Ross on board, and a division some 4,000 strong, of Wellington's army. Landing at Benedict on the 20th, they pushed on, guided by negroes.

25. Armstrong, the Secretary of War, made some blundering attempts to defend the capital, and at last a body of Maryland militia, under Stansbury, with a few of Winder's regulars, Barney's sailors and Miller's marines, formed at Bladensburg to check Ross. The English came up exhausted and doubtful, but as their only chance was in a bold dash, they charged; the militia at once fled; Barney and Miller with their artillery for a time checked the English advance, but as the Annapolis regiment and regulars supporting them at last gave way, they too drew off leaving their wounded commanders on the field. The President and cabinet had been in the field and were hurried off by the fugitives; after reposing for a time, Ross advanced to Washington, and on the 25th of August, with characteristic brutality, burned the capitol and other public buildings, destroying the Library of Congress and the national archives. His position was, however, one of danger, and fearing to be treated as a midnight incendiary if taken, he rapidly retired, leaving his wounded to the mercy of the Americans, who had the courtesy to treat them as prisoners of war. The British fleet next advanced to Alexandria, and carried

mond retire? What was his loss? What force appeared in the Chesapeake in August? When and where did they land?

25. What did Armstrong do? What motley force took post at Bladensburg? Describe the battle. Who were on the field? What did Ross do after the battle? What did he now fear, and how did he act? What did the British fleet do?

off an immense quantity of flour, tobacco, and other merchandise.

26. While one crew of English marauders was thus ravaging and plundering the shores of the Chesapeake, another was committing similar acts on the coast of Maine and Massachusetts ; and the commanders, anxious to assume all the responsibility of such gallant conduct, publicly announced in despatches their intention to destroy and lay waste every town they could reach. In consequence of this conduct serious preparations for defence were made on all parts of the coast ; and when Ross and Cockburn landed at the Patapsco on the 12th of September to attack Baltimore, they found formidable preparations made to receive them. A party of British troops soon engaged the militia, who checked them for a time, but at last fell back, not however, till the incendiary Ross had been killed. The loss on each side had been about two hundred ; in the morning the English advanced, but finding the city strongly defended, bombarded Fort McHenry without effect, and at night silently retired to their ships.

27. Prevost at the north resolved to descend Lake Champlain : crossing the frontier on the 1st of September with 12,000 veterans, he advanced to Plattsburgh ; Macomb, who was posted there, had only 3,000 men, few of whom were fit for duty, but his call for militia was speedily responded to : they came in rapidly from

26. What were other marauders doing ? What did the British officers announce ? Where did Ross next land ? What did he find ? What was the result of the action ? What was the loss on each side ? What did the English do the next day ?

27. What did Prevost attempt, and when ? Who was posted at Plattsburgh, and with what force ? On whom did he call ? Where did he en-

all sides, and Macomb took up a strong position beyond the Saranac. Commodore McDonough drew up his little fleet across the harbor to receive the English fleet under Downie, which bore down upon him on the 11th of September. A desperate fight ensued; but after a contest of over two hours, Downie struck his flag, several others of his vessels did the same, a few escaped, but the fleet was entirely dispersed. Prevost met no better success on land, and failing in an attempt to assail Macomb's camp, he retreated that night in disorder, leaving behind him his sick and wounded, with most of his baggage and stores.

28. Brown's army, now again under his command, was still besieged in Fort Erie; he had called on Izard, then at Sackett's Harbor, for aid, but as that general came up slowly, Brown on the 17th of September made a sudden sortie, surprised some British batteries, blew up the magazines, spiked the guns, and returned to the fort with 400 prisoners. By this sortie Drummond lost nearly a thousand men, and was so disheartened that he raised the siege and retired.

29. As the English menaced the south also, Jackson was appointed to the command of the southern forces, and prepared to act vigorously. He had no army, and a British fleet lay at Pensacola; with a few troops he advanced to Mobile, and stationed Major

camp? Who drew up in front of the harbor? Who bore down upon him, and when? What was the result of the battle? What success had Prevost on land? What did he do by night?

28. What was the position of Brown's army? What did he call for? What did he achieve on the 17th of September? What was Drummond's loss? What did he do in consequence?

27. What other part did the English menace? Who was appointed to

Lawrence with 130 men at Fort Bowyer. They were soon assailed, but so gallantly did it hold out that the English, after losing one ship and 232 men, retired much dispirited. Resolved to drive the English off, Jackson entered Florida, then a Spanish province, took Pensacola, and compelled the English commander, Nicholas, to retire. Learning here that a large force was to act against New Orleans, he proceeded to put that city in a state of defence.

30. New Orleans was a city of about 20,000 inhabitants, still chiefly creoles. Jackson assembled his forces and endeavored to protect the city, but on the 12th of December, 1814, the British fleet anchored off the entrance of Lake Borgne, with 12,000 men under Generals Packenham, Keene, Lambert, and Gibbs, and soon dispersed the American flotilla on Lake Borgne. By proclaiming martial law, and calling on Tennessee and Mississippi for aid, Jackson by the 21st had 5,000 men at his command. Two days after, as the English were within fifteen miles of the city, he advanced with part of his troops to attack them. It was now dark, and the English were severely galled by Jackson's fire, till they by shifting got to a strong position, when he retired. The loss had been about equal, but Jackson's attack gave his own men confidence, and made the English greatly overrate his force.

command? To what city did he advance, and what fort did he garrison? What attack was made on Fort Bowyer, and with what result? What was Jackson's next step? What did he learn?

30. How large was New Orleans? When did the British fleet appear, and with what forces? What was their first success? How did Jackson raise men? What was his first step? What was the result of his night attack? What good did it produce?

31. Jackson now in turn fortified his camp, and for want of time and material, used cotton bales to form a rampart; and anchored a vessel in the stream to cover his flank. On the 28th the English assailed him, and though they at first drove in his outposts, they were compelled to retire with loss after a seven hours' cannonade; but though successful here, Jackson was alarmed by apparently treacherous movements in the Louisiana Assembly, and gave orders which resulted in breaking up the sessions of that body. On the 1st of January, 1815, the enemy again bombarded Jackson's camp, but their guns were soon dismounted and silenced. With the aid of Kentucky volunteers, Jackson soon threw up intrenchments on the other side of the river, and awaited the final attack. It was made on the 8th by Packenham, and his three assistant generals on one side of the river, and by Thornton on the other, against the new American works. Thornton soon carried the position, but the main English force was checked by a murderous fire from Jackson's ramparts. Packenham, attempting to restore order, was killed, Gibbs mortally wounded, and Lambert, who took command, at last retreated, leaving 2,000 dead and wounded on the field. Jackson's loss having been small, only 333 during the whole campaign.

32. Close on the tidings of this glorious victory news arrived at New York that the commissioners sent out

81. What did Jackson then do, and how? When did the English attack him, and with what result? What alarmed Jackson? When did the enemy again bombard Jackson's camp? What did Jackson do after this? When did the English make the final attack, and how? Describe the battle. What was the English loss? Jackson's?

82. What news now arrived? When was the treaty of Ghent signed?

had actually negotiated peace with England, and that Parliament had actually ratified the treaty, and all hostilities were to cease on the ratification by Congress. This took place on the 17th of February, and the treaty of Ghent thus put an end to a rash and almost fatal war, amid the universal joy of a nation.

The war had not ceased at sea. On the 20th of February, the Constitution by moonlight engaged the Cyane and Levant, off Lisbon, and with very slight loss compelled both to strike. In March, the American sloop of war Hornet captured the British brig Penguin, and in June the Peacock compelled the Nautilus to strike to her in the straits of Sunda; this was the last action in the war, which closed as it had begun, in the naval glory of America. During the war the English had captured 1683 American vessels of all kinds, but had lost no less than 1750.

33. War being now ended, the army was reduced to 10,000 men; but the navy was maintained and proposals were made for increasing it; and a fleet under Decatur was sent to chastise Algiers, which had declared war. Having captured two of the largest vessels in the Algerine fleet, Decatur, in June, compelled the Dey to sign a treaty on his quarter-deck, and forced both Tunis and Tripoli to make indemnity for vessels captured under their guns. The war with the Barbary powers was thus brought to a close; and the United States has the glory of having given the first

Where was the war still going on? What two vessels did the Constitution take? Describe the engagement. What other naval victories were gained? What captures had been made on both sides during the war?

33. What power declared war? Who was sent to chastise Algiers? What did he compel the Dey to do? What did he compel Tunis and

decisive blow to their system of piracy, which had endured for centuries. As every one of the Barbary states had learned to respect the American flag, their power was broken, and European powers soon followed our course.

Few events of importance took place at home; Indiana and Mississippi were admitted as States in 1816, and Alabama territory organized. About the same time the established church in Massachusetts lost much of its power, by changes in her statute book. At the same time the general government entered into treaties with the Cherokees, Chickasaws and Choctaws, by which extensive districts were ceded to the States. Such was the close of Madison's administration, the most disastrous which the country had yet experienced, yet the war had been rather bequeathed to him than created by him; and the country, though ravaged by incendiary hordes, soon recovered by the industry and enterprise of the people.

The time for a new election now arrived, and as Madison had already enjoyed a second term, James Monroe, of Virginia, was elected President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President, by an almost unanimous vote.

Tripoli to do? What glory has the United States? What resulted from their action? What States were admitted? What territory organized? What befell the Established Church in Massachusetts? With what Indian tribes were treaties made? What was the character of Madison's administration? Who were now elected?



CHAPTER XII.

MONROE'S, AND ADAMS', AND JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

JAMES MONROE, 1817-1825.

1. MONROE thus raised to the presidential chair, had been long known as a diplomatist and statesman, and from the absence of embittered parties, began his administration under happy auspices. It was a season of peace and tranquillity. No political dissensions disturbed the public mind; commerce had reopened after the war, and emigration checked by it, now assumed a degree of importance, which led in after years to secret political organizations, whose object was to prevent immigration or to reduce new comers to a sort of helots. These emigrants led to the rapid settlement of the western territory, furnished laborers for the great public works soon begun, and as we have already seen, contributed to the formation of new States. The only counterbalance to the national prosperity was the

1. What was the state of the country? What now began to assume importance? What good resulted from this emigration? What was the only counterbalance to all this?

embarrassment caused by the failure of American manufactures, now unable to compete with those of Europe, and in consequence a temporary financial crisis.

2. The Indian affairs in the south, however, soon required attention. A fort of negroes and Indians on the Apalachicola River, in the Spanish province of Florida, had given umbrage to the Georgians by sheltering runaway slaves. Some troops under General Clinch, and Creeks under the half-breed McIntosh, invested it in September, 1816, and having blown up the magazine, killed 350 men, women and children. The fort was then taken, and Clinch immediately put the commanders to death in cold blood. This led to a war which Monroe was now to conduct and leave as a legacy to several succeeding administrations. Under order from the war department, General Gaines, in November, 1817, burned an Indian town, but the Seminoles at once took the field so vigorously that he was obliged to call on the militia of Georgia, and the war department ordered Jackson to march with the Tennessee militia to the seat of war. Building Fort Gadsden on the site of that destroyed by Clinch, he marched east against the Seminole village, which he burnt without loss, and then under the pretext that they aided the Indians, seized the Spanish fort at St. Mark's (April 7, 1818). After this he attacked another Indian fort at the mouth of the Suwanee, where the Indians under Ambrister, an Englishman, in two con-

2. What soon required attention? What gave umbrage to Georgia? What did General Clinch do in 1816? What resulted? Who was sent south? What did he do? What did Jackson effect? What Spanish fort did he take? Describe the affair of

siderable skirmishes checked him for a time, but he at last burned the town, took Ambrister, hanged him and another Englishman found at St. Mark's, and two Indian chiefs entrapped on board an American vessel by the use of false colors. Pensacola was the only Spanish post left, and this Jackson now took, sending the Governor and garrison to Havana. The Spanish government was almost powerless in America, and the United States was annoyed by establishments ostensibly formed to aid the revolted colonies of Spain, but really to carry on contraband trade, and occasionally indulge in piracy. One of these on Amelia Island off the east coast of Florida, and another in Galveston Bay, although within Spanish territory, were broken up by order of the American government.

3. These high-handed proceedings would have led to a war with Spain, had that power been in a position to act on the offensive; but as she was crippled at home, and almost all her American colonies were in open revolt, she merely protested against it, and now at last showed a disposition to sell this troublesome territory to the United States. After considerable discussion a treaty was signed on the 22d of February, 1819, by which, in consideration of the assumption by the Union of American claims to the extent of five millions of dollars, Spain ceded Florida, and fixed as a western boundary of the United States the river Sabine to the 32d degree, and after an irregular line to the head of the Arkansas, made the 42d degree the line be-

Pensacola? How was the commerce of the country annoyed? What was done?

3. What prevented Spain from making war? What did she do? To

tween Mexico and the United States. The Spanish king at first, indeed, refused to confirm this treaty, but finding no alternative, at last ratified it, in October, 1820, and possession of Florida was immediately given. Thus did the oldest colony on our coast finally pass into the hands of the United States. The Spanish settlers, although secured in all their rights, generally emigrated to Cuba, and as few emigrants entered the country, Florida increased but slowly in importance.

4. Some negotiations were still pending with England; under the treaty of Ghent a commission had been appointed to settle the boundary. This, at last in 1819, fixed the northern boundary by running a line through the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes, and making the 49th degree the boundary between the United States and the British possessions, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, Oregon being left undecided and open for ten years to both parties. Previous to this, the Chippewas, Ottawas, Potawatomies, Miamis, Delawares, Shawnees, Wyandots, had sold most of their lands east of the Mississippi, and agreed to remove west of that river; and the Chickasaws ceded most of their land in Kentucky and Tennessee.

5. The settlement of the West still continued to progress. In 1819 Arkansas Territory was organized, Alabama formed into a State, and in 1820

what did discussion lead? What was the effect of the treaty? How did the Spanish king act?

4. What commission was sitting under the treaty of Ghent? What boundary was fixed? How was Oregon left? What Indians sold their lands?

5. What territory was formed in 1819? What states admitted? What

the district of Maine, so long an appanage of Massachusetts, was also admitted into the Union as an independent State. It immediately threw off the church laws of Massachusetts, leaving it the only State in the Union in which there was a church established by law. Missouri also applied for admission, but a new feature was here presented in American politics. Slavery had been authorized in the vast territory of Louisiana, of which Missouri was a part, both by the French and Spanish rulers of that country; and by the treaty of Cession it was still a part of the municipal institutions. A strong party had however grown up in the New England and Middle States averse to slavery, and bent on checking it. Abolition societies were formed in many parts, and their members in Congress now attempted to make the extinction of slavery a condition of the admission of Missouri as a State. The discussions which arose, continued till August, 1821, when by a kind of compromise it was admitted as a slave State; but slavery was prohibited in all other territory north of the southern line of the new State.

6. Monroe and Tompkins were re-elected as unanimously as ever in 1820. Few events of importance, however, signalized Monroe's second term. The visit of Lafayette to the country which he had so nobly served in his youth, and where he was now welcomed as one of the founders of the republic, is the chief event. The government and the citizens vied in doing

change did Maine make? What other territory asked admission? What question arose? On what grounds did slavery rest? Where had abolition doctrines gained ground? How long did the discussion last? What compromise was made?

him honor, and on his departure in 1825, an American frigate was prepared for his accommodation. He never revisited America, but died in France soon after contributing to place Louis Philippe on the throne in 1830. As a gallant officer of our Revolutionary army, and the man who did most to win for us the alliance of Catholic France in our hour of need, Lafayette will ever be an object of national gratitude; and enemies only have ascribed to him a design of exciting the flames of suspicion and bigotry in this country.

7. An important step of Monroe, the doctrine of non-intervention, has often since been approved as a line of policy to be followed by the United States. When Spain found herself unable to reduce her revolted American colonies, she addressed, in December, 1823, a formal invitation to the courts of Russia, Prussia, Austria and France, to send plenipotentiaries to Paris to adopt plans for assisting her. Such a combination of European powers interposing in American affairs was fraught with danger, and Monroe in his message to Congress declared that our government would regard as directed against it, and would resist, any combination of European powers for colonization or any other purpose in America. This doctrine was approved, not only by the unanimous voice of our own people, but also by all parties in England.

8. During the latter years of Monroe's second term expeditions were sent to break up the pirates who had

6. Who were re-elected in 1820? Who visited the country in 1825? Describe his reception. What charge has been made by his enemies?

7. What doctrine did Monroe lay down? What did Spain do in December, 1823? What did Monroe declare in his message? How was this received abroad?

for years been plundering the commerce of America in the West Indies. These expeditions were completely successful, and Commodore Porter, in 1822 and 1823, with a small fleet broke up their various rendezvous and checked their depredations. As his administration closed, it became evident that the public mind had again become divided on the questions of a National Bank, a Protective Tariff, and Internal Improvements. Heretofore the nomination for President had always been made by the members of Congress. John Quincy Adams was now nominated; but Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William H. Crawford appeared as independent candidates. So close was the vote that no election took place; Jackson, evidently the choice of the people, had the largest vote, but not greater than all his antagonists. By the terms of the Constitution, the choice of President devolved upon the House of Representatives, and that body, after many ballottings, chose Adams, the friends of Clay finally voting for him.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, 1825-1829.

9. The administration of the younger Adams is one of the least eventful in our history. Peace prevailed at home and abroad; the country advanced steadily in prosperity and population; the application of steam to vessels had begun to fill our waters with steamboats; railroads were begun, as canals had al-

8. Who were plundering our commerce? Who was sent to break them up? What questions divided the public mind? How had nominations been heretofore made? Who was now nominated in this way? Who appeared as independent candidates? What was the result of the election? On whom did the choice devolve? Whom did it elect?

ready been, and the most distant parts of our immense territory were daily brought into more frequent and easy communication.

Thomas Jefferson and John Adams, both signers of the Declaration of Independence, and each of them subsequently President, each the head of an opposite party, expired on the 4th of July, 1826, just fifty years after the passage of that important act by Congress. The disputes of their day had been forgotten, both had long been regarded with reverence and respect, and their death, on so remarkable a day, was an object of public mourning.

10. Secret societies had been formed under the administration of the elder Adams, to co-operate with the Jacobins and other clubs in France; but the horrors of the French revolution and the general voice of the people soon led to their dissolution. The Freemasons next became the body where those who liked such organizations centred. Charges, however, were brought against them, and the horrible murder in New York, of a man named Morgan, who had threatened to reveal their secrets, produced an outburst of indignation, which resulted in forming an anti-masonic party, long dominant in that section of the Union.

11. The election which took place in 1828, and in which Adams and Jackson were again opposed, was one of greater popular excitement than had ever yet been seen; and opened that series of eagerly contested

9. What was the condition of the country under Adams? What facilitated intercourse? What occurred on July 4, 1826?

10. When had secret societies been in vogue? What body now became popular? What drew odium on them?

elections, so fraught with corruption, intrigue, fraud, and violence, which has since done so much to lower our national character. Jackson now supported by Calhoun and Crawford was again the first on the list, and this time had a sufficient popular vote to become President. John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, was chosen Vice-President.

ANDREW JACKSON, 1829-1837.

12. Anxious to reward his various new friends, Jackson was led into a dangerous course, and by one of his first acts gave a fatal aliment to party spirit. Using the military maxim "to the victors belong the spoils," he gave every office in his gift to his partisans in the late election, removing those already in office, without any objection on the ground of misconduct.

An opposition to the United States Bank had been the chief motive of the Jackson party. As its charter was about expiring, that institution solicited a re-charter; after a long debate an act for that purpose was passed in 1832, but the President vetoed the bill, and having been meanwhile re-elected, he removed the moneys of the United States from the Bank, and deposited them in various State banks.

13. Dreadful scourges, war, and pestilence in the same year afflicted the country. In the summer of 1832, the Asiatic cholera which had ravaged Europe, appeared simultaneously at Quebec and New York, and

11. What was the result of the election in 1828? Why is it an epoch? Who supported Jackson? Who were elected?

12. Into what dangerous course was Jackson led? What act was passed in 1832? What did Jackson do?

13. What scourge appeared in 1832? What war broke out? What act

spread over the whole country, sweeping off thousands. At the same time, the Sacs, Foxes and Winnebagoes, under Black Hawk, crossed the Mississippi and began to ravage the frontier, destroying many new villages, slaughtering whole families, and giving all to the flames. The army sent against them was thinned by the cholera and by desertion, but Colonel Taylor by forced marches overtook the enemy on the 2d of August, at the mouth of the Iowa, and routing the Indians captured Black Hawk and put an end to the war.

14. This Indian war was scarcely ended when a new and greater danger to the country appeared than it had ever yet had to encounter,—the danger of disunion. A tariff act passed in 1832 had imposed duties which the Southern States deemed unjust and partial; most of the States merely murmured, but South Carolina, refusing to submit, threatened to withdraw from the Union and set up an independent government... Similar threats had been made at previous times by Northern States, but they never had gone so far as in this case. South Carolina prepared to resist by force of arms, and electing the eloquent Hayne governor, organized troops; while Calhoun, resigning his post as Vice-President, was chosen to the Senate to make a final effort there. The President was, however, too stern and peremptory a man to brook opposition even in case of doubt; he issued a proclamation declaring his resolution to enforce obedience, if necessary, at the point of

did the Indians commit? Who pursued them? Where did he overtake them? Who was taken prisoner?

14. What new danger arose? What caused the difficulty? How did South Carolina act? Who was elected governor? What did Calhoun do? How did Jackson act? What took place in Congress? What did Clay

the bayonet. His previous career gave proof that such a threat would not be idle. Congress, after a long and able debate, in which Webster gave his great exposition of the Constitution, sustained the President, and Carolina submitted, protesting against the injustice done her. At this juncture Mr. Clay introduced his compromise, which was adopted, and the difficulty was avoided. Amid all this excitement, a Presidential election took place, by which Jackson was re-elected, but Martin Van Buren, of New York, became Vice-President, and about the same time, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, the last of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, expired at a moment when the work of the Continental Congress seemed about to be destroyed.

15. One of Jackson's plans was to remove all Indians beyond the Mississippi; and this was carried out with no regard to previous treaties. The Cherokees had been guaranteed the quiet possession of their lands and a state of independence, with promises of ultimate admission into the Union; but the neighboring States infringed on their rights, extended jurisdiction over their reserves, and reduced them to a kind of vassalage. The injured Indians appealed in vain to the President; although he had just shown his strength, he declared that he had no power to defend them, and they were forced to leave their cultivated fields, their villages where civilization and plenty had begun to smile, and retire to the wilderness.

Introduce? What was the result of the election? Who died about this time?

15. What was one of Jackson's plans? How had the Cherokees been treated?

16. The Seminoles of Florida, descendants of the old converts of the Spanish missionaries, had been deprived of their villages by the English during their occupancy, and became a set of wanderers. They were already embittered against the Americans, and when the government endeavored to pursue its policy, they resolved to resist. A few unauthorized chiefs had agreed to migrate in 1832, but the tribe, with Micanopy their king, disavowed their acts and refused to depart. General Thompson, the government agent, hoping to succeed by coercion, seized one chief, the gallant Osceola, and put him in irons; to obtain his release the Seminole warrior signed the treaty, but instantly prepared for war. Like every other champion of Indian nationality, he resolved to begin by a simultaneous attack on the various posts, and to ravage the country undisturbed. The 24th of December was appointed for the execution of the plot, and Osceola with a party approached Fort King, where General Thompson was stationed; finding the General and some officers dining in a house outside of the fort, he burst in upon the party and killed most of them, among the rest Thompson, who fell pierced by fifteen bullets. Osceola scalped the man who had once seized him, and drew off unpursued. Another Seminole party had watched a body of 110 men, under Major Dade, on its march to the relief of General Clinch, then at Fort Drane. They were approaching the fort when the

16. What other tribe had been injured? What had been done in 1832? Who disavowed this? What did General Thompson do? How did Osceola act? What was his plan? When did he begin, and how? What was another party doing? Describe the battle. How many escaped?

Seminole suddenly attacked them. At the first volley, Dade and most of his men fell; thirty survived, and threw up an intrenchment of logs, but Osceola soon appeared, and in another attack cut all to pieces, one alone surviving long enough to reach the whites, and tell the fate of the detachment.

17. General Clinch now collected all his forces and marched to the Withlacoochee, but he too was suddenly attacked on the 31st, and though he repulsed the Indians, his loss amounted to forty killed and sixty wounded, so that he was compelled to return. In February, General Gaines was attacked near the same place, and as the Creeks also took up arms, Georgia, Florida, and Alabama were exposed to all the horrors of Indian war. Steamboats were taken, villages burned, and thousands driven from their homes. General Scott, however, reduced the Creeks, several thousand of whom were immediately transported to the west; and in October, 1836, Governor Call took command of the forces and marching into Florida encountered the Seminoles at Wahoo swamp, and twice repulsed them with loss, after a terrible contest. Checked by these blows, the Seminoles for a time ceased active hostilities.

18. The emigration from Europe, especially after the war with England, had steadily increased. Of these emigrants, a large majority were Catholics from Ireland; as they scattered over the country churches and other religious buildings arose; seminaries and

17. What did Clinch do? What was the battle of the Withlacoochee? Who was subsequently attacked? Who joined the Seminoles? Who reduced the Creeks? Describe Call's campaign. What was the result?

18. What were the majority of the emigrants? What arose, and how?

institutions of learning were founded, without any public aid or public countenance. The rapid increase of the Catholics, however, excited the hostility of a fanatical portion of the old inhabitants, and more especially of such foreigners as disagreed with the Catholics. This hostility was augmented by the fact that the emigrants, availing themselves of the invitation held out by law, became citizens and took part in all public discussions. Designing men sought to fan this hostility into a flame, and by composing books under the name of pretended refugees from convents, excited such a spirit of hatred, that on the 11th of August, 1834, a mob attacked at night the Ursuline Convent at Boston, set it on fire, and drove the nuns and their pupils from the spot. The authorities took no steps to check them, and the leaders of the riot were duly acquitted after the semblance of a trial. Encouraged by this success, similar books, of a most obscene character continued to appear, papers were established especially to assail the Catholic religion, and threats were issued against other Catholic institutions. The excitement, however, subsided for a time, but was subsequently renewed with fatal effect.

19. A strange revolution was now taking place in the neighborhood of the United States. Texas, to which many Americans had emigrated, was one of the states composing the Mexican republic; but as the emigrants did not coalesce with the Mexicans, but differed in religion and introduced slavery, dissensions

What did their numbers excite? What did designing men do? What took place in December, 1834? What followed?

1. What was taking place near the United States? What was Texas? What did Mexico do in 1835? How did Texas act? What was done

soon ensued. The Mexicans, in 1835, renounced the federal system and abolished the state governments; on this the Texans took up arms, and called on their countrymen in the United States to join them. The government offered no obstacle, and such numbers hastened to Texas, that on the 2d of March, 1836, they declared themselves an independent Republic. Santa Anna, President of Mexico, advanced against them in person, but was defeated and taken prisoner by General Houston, at the battle of San Jacinto, on the 21st of April. A treaty was extorted from Santa Anna never recognized by Mexico, but which nevertheless gave a period of peace. Under a separate government, Texas assimilated more and more to the United States, and was evidently preparing to join it.

20. Our intercourse with foreign nations during the whole period of Jackson's administration, was ~~one of~~ uninterrupted peace. The only exception was a momentary difficulty with France, as to compensation for injuries to American property. France showed herself averse to payment, and Jackson threatened war, but by the intervention of England, the affair was amicably arranged. As Jackson's term approached, Martin Van Buren was put forward by the Democrats, and William Henry Harrison by the Whigs, as candidates for the Presidency, but Van Buren was elected President, and Richard M. Johnson, the reputed slayer of Tecumseh, Vice-President.

on the 2d of March, 1836? How did Mexico act? Describe the battle of San Jacinto. How did Texas prosper under the new government?

20. What was the nature of our intercourse with other nations? What were the troubles with France? Who were ~~put~~ forward as candidates? Who was elected as President? Who as Vice-President?



CHAPTER XIII.

VAN BUREN'S, HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, 1837-1841.

1. SOON after Van Buren's accession, a general bankruptcy took place; under the system pursued since the fall of the United States Bank, smaller banks had grown up in numbers, which by giving extensive credit had inflated prices to an unprecedented degree; speculation took the place of industry, cities were planned where the plough had never passed, and all for a moment gloried in visions of wealth and affluence, but when the reaction came, thousands were instantly reduced to poverty. The failure amounted to several hundred millions of dollars, and in perfect inability to meet their debts, the insolvents looked to the government for some aid.

2. By the "Specie Circular" of Jackson all payments to the government were required to be in specie; Van Buren was now solicited to recall this, but on his refusal the banks in the country, led by those of New York, suspended specie payments, and the government

1. What took place soon after Van Buren's accession? What had caused it? What was the extent of the failures?

2. What was the Specie Circular? What did Van Buren refuse?

which had deposited the surplus in banks, was itself embarrassed. An extra session of Congress was called and treasury notes issued to the amount of ten millions. To prevent a recurrence of such a difficulty, Van Buren proposed, and finally carried, a plan for an Independent Treasury, much opposed at first, but since generally approved.

3. The Seminole war still continued, and though a treaty was made at Fort Dade, in March, 1837, it was soon broken. General Jessup soon after seized Osceola, and some other chiefs who came to treat, and retained them as prisoners. The Seminoles were much weakened by this, but still continued the war, although without skilful chiefs, and with a regular army of 9,000 men against them. For a time they evaded an action, but in December, Colonel Zachary Taylor penetrated to the haunt of the Mickasuckies, who had stubbornly refused all offers of pacification. They were drawn up under Aviaka, in a strong position near Lake Okeechobee, in the southern part of the peninsula; Taylor, who besides his regulars had some Mississippi volunteers, under Colonel Gentry, immediately attacked their camp. The battle lasted over three hours, and so desperately did the Indians fight, that Colonel Gentry was killed and his volunteers routed, but the regulars rallying, a part finally repulsed the enemy, who drew off unpursued. This battle broke their power, but it was dearly bought, for Taylor had 26

What did the banks do? What was called, and what issued? What did Van Buren then adopt? How was this regarded?

8. When was a treaty made with the Seminoles? What did Jessup do? How did the Seminoles act? What battle was fought in December. Describe it. What was done in 1839? Who closed the war, and when?

of his men killed and 112 wounded, including some of his most valuable officers. Many of the Indians now submitted and removed, and in 1839, General Macomb again induced them to treat of peace, but as hostilities were soon after renewed, Colonels Worth and Harney at last in 1841, reduced them by penetrating to their fastnesses, cutting down their crops, and sweeping off their cattle.

In one point of view, this long and expensive war had been of actual service; it proved an excellent school for our army, and gradually prepared our gallant officers to win immortal fame in more conspicuous fields.

4. Previous to the closing of this war, a trouble of another character had embarrassed the government. Canada, though its privileges had provoked the Americans before the Revolution, was now itself discontented with the English government. In 1837, an insurrection broke out, and as any cry for liberty finds a ready response in American bosoms, many persons in the United States, and especially in New York, hastened to aid the cause of the revolution. This would involve the United States with England, and to arrest it, the President by proclamation forbade all citizens of the United States to interfere, and ordered troops to the frontier. Many, however, continued to cross the lines and take part in the contest. Some of these were killed, more taken prisoners, and executed or transported. The English were provoked at this in-

4. In what way was the war beneficial? What European colony was in a state of discontent? What broke out in 1837, and how was it viewed in the United States? What did the President do? What did Americans

terference, and as they were annoyed by a party of the insurgents, on Navy Island, in Niagara River, resolved to cut off the steamboat Caroline, which plied between the island and the American shore. Failing to surprise it on any of its trips, they sent over a detachment to the American shore on the night of the 20th of December, 1837. This party cut the Caroline loose, set fire to her and sent her over Niagara Falls with all those on board of her, besides killing one person on the dock. This outrage excited the public mind to the highest degree, but the infringement of our national rights was never disavowed by the English government.

5. The United States Government had never been insensible to the advancement of science, and in many ways had encouraged it as far as its limited constitutional powers permitted. Some of the States began to collect in Europe documents relating to their early history, and at the same time, caused accurate surveys to be made in order to compile the natural history of each; including, under this head, the geology, mineralogy, zoology, and botany. So admirably were these carried out, especially in New York, that no country can show a more noble monument. The United States Government, to aid in this general movement, sent out, in 1838, an exploring expedition under Captain Wilkes, which visited much of the Southern and Pacific Oceans, and after making several important discoveries returned, and made reports full of interest.

continue to do? Where were the patriots posted in 1837? What did the English officers do?

5. What had the government done for science? What had the states done? Which excelled? What expedition was fitted out?

6. A frontier difficulty occurred in Maine in 1839, which led to some negotiation. The treaty of 1783, which fixed the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick proved ambiguous, when an attempt was made to run a line. The King of Belgium had been appointed umpire, but he pleased neither party. As the disputed strip was valuable for its timber, the people of Maine attempted to drive off the New Brunswick lumbermen, and some on both sides were taken into custody by the two governments as trespassers. Some excitement prevailed, but as the governors of Maine and New Brunswick soon came to an amicable understanding, further collisions were prevented, and the whole affair was left to the higher authorities. Van Buren's government had not been popular, and the people oppressed by the results of the revulsion of 1837, sought a general bankrupt law. At the next election, which was one of peculiar enthusiasm, General William H. Harrison, the Whig candidate, was chosen President, and John Tyler Vice-President, Van Buren being defeated by a large vote, receiving only sixty electoral votes, his antagonist having no less than 234.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, 1841.

7. General Harrison was inaugurated President on the 4th of March, 1841, and to fulfil the wishes of the people, on the 17th issued a proclamation calling an

6. What frontier difficulty occurred in 1839? What led to it? How was it arrested? What were then begun? How had Van Buren's government been liked? What did the people ask? Who was elected President?

7. When was Harrison inaugurated? What did he issue? What soon happened? Why was his loss lamented?

extra session of Congress to meet in May. Great hopes were entertained of his administration, but it was soon to end. His health was broken, and the exertions consequent upon his assuming the new and arduous duties of his exalted post, hurried him to the grave. Before he had accomplished any public act, he expired after a short illness, on the 4th of April, 1841, to the universal regret of the nation, to whom he was endeared by his long and meritorious services both civil and military, especially in the West.

JOHN TYLER, 1841-1845.

8. By the death of General Harrison, the Vice-President, John Tyler, in conformity with the provisions of the constitution, succeeded to the Presidency. Although not altogether of the same views as the late President, he retained the same cabinet, and in the extra session approved a general bankrupt act, and the repeal of the sub-treasury bill; when Congress, however, passed a bill for reviving the Bank of the United States, he vetoed it, to the great chagrin of those who had contributed to his election. His cabinet in consequence resigned, and his new appointments were of a character to satisfy neither of the great parties. The boundary of Maine had been, as we have seen, a matter of negotiation between the United States and Great Britain. Webster, as Secretary of State, conducted the discussion with Lord Ashburton,

8. Who became President? What was done in the extra session? What did his cabinet do? What were his new appointments? What treaty was concluded? when and where? Who negotiated it? What its effect? What other boundary was regulated? What else was settled?

and in July, 1842, a treaty was signed at Washington. It was soon ratified by both countries, and finally arranged matters describing the line so accurately as to admit of no further doubt. It also settled the northern limit of New York, New Hampshire and Vermont, obviating all cause of difficulty in that quarter.

9. Rhode Island had till now been governed under the charter granted by Charles II., the last relic of the reign of the Stuarts. This charter contained, however, great restrictions on the right of suffrage, and a large party in the State had long sought a more liberal government. This the chartered party refused, and in consequence, a convention of the people assembled, which drew up a constitution and submitted it to the people. As it received the approval of the people, the new government organized itself in May, 1842, under Thomas W. Dorr as Governor. The charter government treated all these proceedings as illegal, and made the exercise of any powers under the new constitution, treason against the State. The suffrage party then had recourse to force, but their efforts were defeated, and Dorr was compelled to leave the State. He soon after returned, but was arrested, tried for treason, and on his conviction, sentenced to imprisonment for life. He was, however, soon released. This ended the struggle, for the excitement led to the calling of another and more regular convention in 1844, which drew up a new constitution suitable to the wants of the people.

9. How had Rhode Island been governed? What did a large party ask? What was done? How did the charter government act? What did the suffrage party do, and with what result? What became of Dorr? What ended the struggle?

10. During this time, New York was disturbed by troubles of another character. There existed in it some portions held under the old Patroon grants, and subject to feudal tenure, by which the tenants paid rent in produce, and on every transfer of the lease were compelled to pay a certain amount in the nature of a tax. To these conditions many tenants objected, and under the name of anti-renters, organized to oppose their landlords, and any officer of the law who should attempt to serve process on them. This disturbance spread over most of Columbia, Rensselaer, and Delaware Counties, and for a time set the state authorities at defiance. A deputy sheriff and some others were killed in broad day, and many others brutally treated, but the government at last crushed the insurrection and brought the murderers to trial.

11. While these causes of dissension existed in particular parts, a general spirit of discord prevailed. We have already spoken of the efforts made to prejudice the public mind against the Catholics. So well had they succeeded, that even school books were filled with misrepresentations of Catholics, and in those public schools for which Catholics and Protestants were alike taxed, the Catholic child was never safe from insult to his feelings. An attempt of the Catholics in New York to obtain a reformation in this particular, met with a decided negative from the city government, and on their addressing the legislature, both

10. How was New York disturbed? What existed there? To what did the tenants object? Over what counties did the excitement spread? What outrages were committed? How was the disturbance quelled?

11. How was the public mind influenced towards Catholics? To what did this spirit penetrate? What were the Catholics in New York com-

political parties pledged themselves to oppose the petition of the Catholics. This left the latter no alternative but to select candidates in 1841.

Or this a new storm against the Catholics arose, new slanders were invented and circulated, and as the German emigrants, mostly mechanics, had by their numbers begun to compete seriously with the American tradesmen, a strong feeling existed against them, which it was very easy to rouse. A new crusade began against Catholics and foreigners. A new party, calling themselves Native Americans, arose, and soon carried the elections in several States. In May 1844, a Native meeting was called in a part of Philadelphia inhabited chiefly by Irish Catholics; the speeches, as usual, were intended to provoke violence; a storm of rain came on, and in the rush for shelter, the natives began to fire on the crowd; a riot ensued, and the cry was raised "to the nunnery." A mob rushed to a house recently occupied by Sisters of Charity, and in which they had nursed the cholera patients of every sect, but here, just as the mob had torn down a fence to kindle the flames, a volley was fired on them, which killed one, and put the rest to flight.

The next day the rioters continued their work and destroyed the house, two churches, one memorable for having first rung out a peal on the Declaration of Independence, a splendid public library, and over fifty dwelling houses, their bands meanwhile playing the party tunes of Protestant societies in Ireland, and

pelled to do? What was the consequence? What other cause induced hostility to foreigners? What took place at Philadelphia in May, 1844? What did the mob attack? What took place the next day? How did the

cheering when the crosses on the churches fell. The city authorities showed great inefficiency, and thus emboldened the mob to act their pleasure. Many of both parties were tried for riot, and some condemned; but the natives were not appeased - they renewed the work in July, by attacking another Catholic church. This time the authorities acted with more energy, yet the riots were subdued only by the Governor, who detailed militia from other counties, and after a long and severe fight, reduced the rebels and restored peace.

12. While the Atlantic States were thus convulsed, the West also was the scene of a civil war, to explain which we must go back a few years. About the year 1830, a man named Joseph Smith, living in Western New York, pretended to have received a new revelation from God, written in mystic characters on plates of brass. These, by his prophetic power, he deciphered, and published under the title of the "Book of Mormon." Assuming to be a prophet, this impostor founded a new religion, but as his character became known, he was driven from place to place, yet constantly gained proselytes, and at last settled at Kirtland in Ohio. Persecuted here, he and his followers, now numbering several thousands, set out for the West, and settled in Jackson County, Missouri. Here the people rose against them, and the governor himself unfavorable, ordered them to be exterminated or expelled; under his orders the militia suddenly attacked

city authorities act? When were the riots renewed? How were the rebels subdued?

12. What disturbances took place in the West? Who was Joseph Smith, and what were his pretensions? Where did he settle? To what state did he remove? How were the Mormons treated in Missouri? To

the Mormons, killed many and forced the rest to leave the State. The fugitives then settled in Illinois, and in 1841, founded the City of Nauvoo, on the Mississippi. They were at first welcomed ; and as they rapidly increased in numbers by the exertions of Smith's missionaries in America and England, Smith obtained a very favorable charter for his city ; but here, as elsewhere, prejudice soon arose, and accusations of a heinous character were made against the Mormons. The country rose in arms ; Nauvoo was besieged, several were killed on both sides. A charge of murder was now made against Smith, and that leader, anxious to disarm the popular wrath, surrendered himself to the proper authorities to stand his trial. The mob, unwilling to trust to the law, surrounded the place where he was confined, and bursting in, with great brutality murdered him and his brother in cold blood. As the troubles continued, the Anti-Mormons soon compelled the followers of Smith to leave their homes in Nauvoo. His death had neither undeceived nor disheartened them ; they yielded to their hard fate, and set out for California.

13. Such were the intestine troubles which marked the period of Tyler's administration. They were not sufficient to check the general prosperity of the country ; the continued tide of emigration enabled the territories to fill up rapidly, and in March, 1845, an act was passed admitting as States, Florida and Iowa.

what state did they then retire ? What city did they find ? What soon arose ? What took place ? What did Smith do ? What became of him ? What became of his followers ?

18. What was the general state of the country What states were ad-

Just previous to this, Congress had, on the 28th of February, by a joint resolution, agreed to the annexation of Texas to the United States, a step which that republic had solicited for some time. It had, indeed, maintained its independence, but owing to many difficulties, was not in a state of prosperity. The Mexican government, which had never recognized the independence of Texas, and had constantly maintained a hostile attitude towards it, declared that it would consider annexation as a declaration of war. No sooner had the resolution passed than the Mexican Minister, Almonte, protested against this act, which was, however, ratified by Texas on the 5th of July following, and thus completed the union of the two countries. By the act, the Texan territory, with its undetermined limits, came into the Union; and as the question of slavery had again arisen, it was agreed by a new compromise that Congress should have power to form the territory into four States, and that on such division all north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ should be free States, and that in the others, slavery should be tolerated.

14. The questions which divided the public mind in the fall of 1844, were the dispute with England as to the Oregon boundary, and that with Mexico, in regard to Texas. A great majority of the people were eager for war, especially with Mexico, as the accounts from Texas of cruelties perpetrated by the Mexicans

mitted? To what step did Congress agree? What did Mexico declare? What did the Mexican minister do after the resolution of Congress? When did Texas ratify it? What compromise was made in admitting Texas?

14. What were the questions in the election of 1844? How were the people inclined? Who were the candidates? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

had inflamed the public mind against that country. Henry Clay, the candidate of the whig party, being in favor of negotiation, was defeated by James K. Polk, of Tennessee, the war candidate, who now became President, with George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, as Vice-President.





CHAPTER XIV.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

JAMES K. POLK, 1845-1849.

1. At the commencement of Polk's administration, the United States was, from the various causes we have mentioned, restless and excited, but prosperous and powerful. Mexico was distracted and weak; from the period when it threw off the authority of Spain, it had steadily declined, and in consequence of the ambition of the military chieftains who seized the supreme power, was frequently involved in civil war. Yucatan and California were scarcely integral parts of the Republic; the flourishing missions of the Franciscan Fathers, which had formed so many villages of Indian converts in Texas, New Mexico, and California, had been broken up, and the Indians scattered. These portions were accordingly exposed to incursions from the wild Indians, and suffered greatly.

2. The United States might easily have settled a boundary with Mexico, but Polk resolved to force

1. What was the position of the United States? Of Mexico? What Mexican states were only nominally subject? Where had the missions been scattered?

compliance. Although the Nueces had been the boundary of Texas as a Mexican state, he resolved to enforce the Texan claim to the Rio Grande, as a boundary from its mouth to its source, thus including within the limits of Texas, the greater part of New Mexico, and even its ancient capital Santa Fé. General Zachary Taylor, sent to occupy the disputed territory between the Nueces and Rio Grande, was repeatedly instructed "that the appearance of any considerable body of Mexican troops in this territory, would be regarded by the executive as an invasion of the United States, and the commencement of hostilities." Taylor, at the head of a small army, advanced slowly, awaiting engineers and supplies, but in March, 1846, erected Fort Brown on the Rio Grande opposite Matamoras. The Mexicans considering this an invasion of their country, prepared to resist. The settlers fled beyond the Rio Grande, and troops began to centre at Matamoras, crossing from time to time. In April, a detachment under Torrejon, surprised and took a party of American dragoons under Thornton.

3. In May, Ampudia, the Mexican general at Matamoras, opened a cannonade on Fort Brown, which Taylor had left in command of Major Brown. The American general was himself at Point Isabel, but on hearing the bombardment of the fort, immediately marched to its relief. Arista had now succeeded Ampudia; in hopes of crushing the divided army, he

2. What claim did Polk resolve to enforce, and how? Who was sent into the disputed territory, and with what instructions? What did Taylor erect, and where? How did the Mexicans act? Who surprised an American detachment?

3. What did Ampudia do in June? Who marched to its relief? Who

crossed the river in full force, and took post at Palo Alto to check Taylor, and continued the bombardment of the fort. On the 8th of May, at noon, General Taylor came up, with an army considerably inferior to Arista's. Forming his line of battle, he opened a furious cannonade, which was returned with spirit, but with slight effect. The Mexican cavalry now charged on the American right, but were driven back by the artillery and infantry; yet their army, cut up as it was by the terrible cannonade of our force, resolutely maintained its position. Arista now endeavored with his batteries to silence the American guns, and by a perfect tempest of balls, for a moment checked our fire, cutting down Major Ringgold and Captain Page at their guns; he then again and again charged with his cavalry, till his squadrons were broken. On this his whole force drew off, leaving the Americans victorious on the field. Taylor's loss, in killed and wounded, was about 50; that of Arista about 300.

4. The next day Taylor advanced, and soon came up again with Arista, who had taken post at Resaca de la Palma. Here another engagement took place. The enemy were well posted, and again endeavored, by their artillery, to check the fearful batteries of the Americans, but the dragoons under May drove their gunners from the artillery, and the American infantry soon took their best battery; the main body of Tay-

had succeeded Ampudia? What did he do? When did Taylor come up? How did the battle open? What attempts did Arista now make? How did the battle end? What was the loss?

4. What did Taylor do the next day? Describe the battle. What did

lor's army meanwhile driving the Mexicans from the ravine where they were posted. An irregular combat now ensued, but the Americans pushed steadily forward, and drove the enemy from thier intrenchments, capturing all their camp equipage. Taylor's loss was 39 killed and 83 wounded, that of Arista several hundred, on the field, and still more in the flight to Matamoras.

After the battle, Taylor pressed on to Fort Brown, and, acting in concert with Commodore Connor, took Barita, at the mouth of the river, and prepared to attack Matamoras, but that city surrendered on the 18th.

5. The President had not, meanwhile, been idle. When the news of Thornton's capture reached Washington, the administration eagerly seized it as a pretext for war, and as though the disputed territory had never been disputed, Polk sent a bombastic message to Congress, announcing that American blood had been shed on American soil, and that war existed by the act of Mexico. Congress immediately acted on the message, and on the 13th of May passed an act authorizing 50,000 volunteers to be raised, and appropriating ten millions of dollars to carry on the war. As the motive of the war was conquest, and not the possession of the disputed strip, a plan of campaign was formed for attacking Mexico in various parts, and occupying her most valuable frontier states. A fleet

the Americans capture? What was the loss? What did Taylor then do? What city did he prepare to attack? When did it surrender?

6. What had been done meanwhile at Washington? What did Congress do? What plan of campaign was formed? What three points were to be attacked?

bearing troops was sent around to take possession of California, already explored by American officers, and known to contain great mineral wealth; an army was to march from Missouri to Santa Fe, take New Mexico and enter California; a more considerable army was to centre in Texas and invade Coahuila. Immediate steps were taken to organize these armies, and carry on the war.

6. Taylor, in the mean time, received reinforcements, chiefly volunteers, and finding himself in September at the head of 6,000 men, resolved to advance on Monterey, the route having been opened by General Worth. On the 19th, he appeared before the city, and prepared to attack it. An old palace of the Bishops, now a strong work, was the chief fortification. Worth was despatched to turn this, and attack the heights in the rear. To cover his assault, Lieutenant Colonel Garland, with another division, attacked the lower town; Butler and Quitman, with a third division, carried the enemies' advanced battery, and secured a position in the town. Meanwhile, Worth had encountered the enemy in force, repulsed him with heavy loss, and carried two of the heights. The next day Worth carried the palace itself, and entered the town, while Quitman, in spite of all the efforts of the enemy to dislodge him, fought his way in from house to house and reached the plaza. Ampudia now began to draw in his troops for a last struggle, but finding

6. What did Taylor do in September? When did he appear before Monterey? What was its chief fortification? Who was despatched to attack it? Who was sent against the lower town? What did Butler and Quitman do? What did Worth and Quitman effect next day? What did Ampudia do? How did our soldiers act? What was the American loss?

resistance hopeless, on the 24th offered to capitulate, and surrendered the city, marching out with his troops. In this battle, one of the most sanguinary in our annals, the American soldiers, both regulars and volunteers, displayed the greatest skill and courage; and amid all the fearful firing, Father Rey, a Catholic chaplain sent to attend the Catholic soldiers, whose rights had been at first disregarded, won the esteem of all by the fearless manner in which he accompanied his regiment. The American loss was 120 killed and 368 wounded, that of the enemy still greater.

7. The government of Mexico had thus far been in the hands of Paredes, an advocate of war; but as General Santa Anna, then in Cuba, professed a desire for peace, the government at Washington came to an understanding with him, and enabled him to pass through the fleet before Vera Cruz. No sooner, however, was he in the country, than he assumed the direction of affairs, and prepared to carry on the war with vigor. The United States was now compelled to adopt new plans.

8. The other operations of this campaign had, meanwhile, succeeded, though not as intended. When war was declared, Commodore Sloat was off the coast of California; believing that war existed, he took Monterey on the 7th of July, 1846, and San Francisco soon after, while Colonel Fremont, who was at San Juan, raised the standard of independence. The Mexican

7. Who was President of Mexico? What negotiations took place with Santa Anna? How did he act?

8. Who was off the coast of California? What did he take? Who also rose against the Mexicans? What was the result? What did Kear-

authorities resisted and recovered some places, but the country was virtually conquered before the arrival of any division of the army.

An army under Kearney set out in June for Santa Fé, with 1,600 men, and in August peacefully entered that ancient capital of New Mexico, and leaving Colonel Doniphan in command, proceeded with a small detachment to California. Doniphan soon after advanced against the Navajoes, and having compelled them to make peace, marched on Chihuahua. After dispersing a Mexican force at Bracito, on the 22d of December, he encountered on the 28th of February, a force of 4,000 Mexicans, under Trias, at the Sacramento pass, near Chihuahua. After a short but decisive struggle, in which the Mexicans suffered terribly, he completely routed them, and soon entered the city.

Some outbreaks occurred in all these parts, but they remained in the control of the United States from that time.

9. The administration, deceived by Santa Anna, now resolved to attack the city of Vera Cruz, and march on the capital of the country. To carry out this plan, General Scott was directed to raise a new army, drawing such forces as he could from General Taylor. He reached Texas late in the year, and began to assemble his troops, and at last, in March, united all his forces on Lobos Island, and on the 7th em-

ney's army effect? How did Kearney then act? What did Doniphan do? On what city did he march? Describe the campaign. What was done here during the rest of the war?

9. What plan did the government now form? Who was sent out? Where did he unite his forces? When did he appear before Vera Cruz?

barked for Vera Cruz. Two days later he appeared before that city.

10. We must now turn to Santa Anna. By unparalleled exertions, that active commander had assembled an army of 22,000 men, and lay at San Luis Potosi. His plan of action was soon decided. Finding that Taylor's army had been greatly reduced by its detachments to Scott's force, and trusting to delays in Scott's movements, he resolved to crush Taylor by a decisive blow, and then march to the relief of Vera Cruz, which he hoped to reach in time. In February, Taylor, with gloomy forebodings heard of his approach, and hastily calling in his various divisions, fell back to a position of remarkable strength, near Buena Vista, and there drew up his force, about six thousand strong, with his left on a high mountain, and his right and front so covered by a series of ravines, as to be impracticable even for infantry. Santa Anna, who supposed Taylor to be flying before him, pushed on with a force of at least 20,000 men, well equipped, but almost destitute of provisions. Finding Taylor ready to receive him, Santa Anna summoned him to surrender, and on his refusal prepared to attack. As the American left was the only feasible point, he detached Ampudia with the light troops to occupy the mountain. These were soon attacked by our left under Marshall, and the skirmishing continued till night; and at the same time a detachment of Mexican cavalry under Miñon, penetrated to the rear.

10. What had Santa Anna done? How did he resolve to act? What did Taylor do? Where did he take post? Describe it. What was Santa Anna's force? What did he do? Where did he begin the attack, and how? What else did he do?

11. In the morning, Santa Anna again attacked the extreme left and advanced on the centre, but being repulsed here, accumulated his forces under Generals Lombardini and Pacheco, to force our left, then occupied by Lane. The charge was terrible. O'Brien's artillery in vain attempted to check their progress, an Indiana regiment fled in confusion, and that part of our army gave way. On this, General Wool, then momentarily in command, called in the light troops on the mountain, and drew in his left. Santa Anna endeavored to follow up his advantage, but Taylor, who had come up from the rear, reinforced his left, and the action was here warmly sustained, Santa Anna making repeated efforts with foot and horse to break the line, but always with increasing loss. A diversion in his favor was made by one of his detachments, which, reaching the American rear, attacked the trains and baggage at Buena Vista; they were, however, checked and cut off from their main body by Colonels Marshall and Yell. Meanwhile, our left stood a last fearful charge; for Santa Anna, calling in his left and all his reserves, made a last attack in person, sustained by Generals Perez and Pacheco; his advance was, however, galled by O'Brien's and Bragg's batteries, but he pushed on, and the level portions between the ravines, became alternate points of attack and defence. The American troops fought with desperate courage, but the Kentucky and Illinois regiments, after losing

11. What did Santa Anna do in the morning? What was the result of his charge? What did Wool do? How did Santa Anna follow up his advantage, and with what effect? What diversion did he make? What was Santa Anna's next charge? How was it met? What prevented the

Colonels Clay, Hardin and McKee, were driven back. Sauta Anna made one more effort, but the artillery and the nature of the ground checked him, and he at last drew back; and thus after a fearful day of battle, night came on, and both parties remained in their original positions.

In the morning, Taylor prepared to sustain another attack, but he soon found that Santa Anna was in full retreat. Such was the eventful battle of Buena Vista, in which an American force of 5,000 for a whole day sustained the incessant attack of an army four times their number. Taylor's loss was about 300 killed, and 500 wounded, while Santa Anna had at least 500 killed, and 1,500 wounded.

This glorious victory completely overthrew the Mexican power in that portion of the country. Taylor centred his army at Monterey, and soon after returned to the United States, in consequence of difficulties with the administration. In all his campaign there was nothing to dim the lustre of his army, except occasional lawless acts and outrages by some of the volunteers, which he was unable to check; but which showed the necessity of the most severe discipline with troops of that description.

12. We left Scott before Vera Cruz. Having summoned the city to surrender, he prepared on their refusal to bombard it, and the castle of San Juan de Ullua, its chief defence. The cannonade began on the 22d from the land batteries, and the fleet, not only on

Mexicans from pressing on? How did the armies remain at night? What did Santa Anna do? Why was the battle glorious? What was the loss?

12. When did Scott begin the siege of Vera Cruz? Where was the

the castle but also on the city. The destruction in the city, especially among the citizens, their wives and children, was terrible; and as Scott refused a truce to allow them or neutrals to depart, General Landero, the commander, seeing no other means of stopping the carnage, on the 26th made proposals for a capitulation. Three days afterwards, the garrison marched out and laid down their arms, giving their parole not to serve in the war until exchanged. Scott immediately occupied the city and the castle of San Juan de Ullua, with the forts Santiago and Concepcion. This capture effected with very slight loss, gave a terrible blow to the Mexicans' plans, as it was their strongest post, and was full of artillery and supplies.

13. The next step was to commence the march on the capital. Wagons, and other necessary articles, were soon landed, and on the 8th of April, Twiggs' division moved forward towards the interior. Santa Anna, at the head of a new army, was, however, approaching; and Twiggs, on reaching the village of Plan del Rio, on the limit of the tierra caliente, or lowlands, found the Mexican army under Santa Anna, drawn up in a very strong position at the pass of Cerro Gordo, and numbering nearly twelve thousand men. Before Twiggs could begin the attack, Scott came up with the main army and prepared for action. Early on the 17th, Twiggs began to cut a road through the brushwood to reach Cerro Gordo, without being

destruction terrible? What did Scott refuse? What did Landero do, and when? When did his army march out?

18. Who led the march into the interior? Where did he meet the enemy? Under whom, and in what force? What did Twiggs do on the 17th? What did they bring on? What height did the Americans take?

exposed to a heavy Mexican battery between that point and the American camp. Here the battle began, and Santa Anna himself hurried up to cheer up his men; but the Americans, under Colonel Childs, drove him back and occupied the heights of Atalaya. The next day, from this point our troops, under Harney and Riley, stormed the heights of Cerro Gordo on different sides, and killing General Vasquez, drove the Mexicans with terrible loss from the hill. They were, however, exposed now to another Mexican battery, and Colonel Riley and General Shields were detached to take it; Shields fell severely wounded, but his men swept on, and drove the Mexicans from their guns. All was now confusion; Santa Anna in vain endeavored to rally his men, his army was totally routed. The heavy Mexican battery nearest the American camp, had gallantly repulsed an assault led by General Pillow, but seeing the rout of Santa Anna, they hoisted a white flag, and surrendered to the number of three thousand. Scott's loss in this engagement was 63 killed and 367 wounded, while Santa Anna left over 1,000 killed and wounded on the field.

14. Scott then pushed on to Jalapa, and having occupied the strong castles of La Hoya and Perote, advanced to Puebla. Here he was compelled to remain for reinforcements, as three thousand volunteers, whose term of service had expired, left him. By August he was ready to advance, with an army of

Who stormed Cerro Gordo, and how? Who were detached against another battery? What was now the condition of the Americans? Where had the Mexicans maintained their ground? What was the loss at this battle?

14. What was Scott's advance? What compelled him to halt, and where?

10,000 men, and leaving a garrison at Puebla, continued his march. They soon reached the valley in which Mexico lay, and here their difficulties began. Santa Anna, who still refused to negotiate, had garrisoned all the strong positions, and was again at the head of an army of 25,000 men, ready to check the Americans. Avoiding the causeways, all protected by fortresses, Scott pushed on to San Agustin. Here began the Pedregal, a broken field of lava deemed impassable, beyond which, at Contreras, General Valencia lay with 6,000 men. General Smith pushed over the Pedregal with his own, Riley's and Cadwallader's brigades, followed by Shields; at San Hieronimo, Santa Anna met him, but fell back, and at three o'clock in the morning, in the pitchy darkness, Riley advanced to assault the Mexican works at Contreras. He soon carried the camp; Smith's brigade routed Torrejon's cavalry, and Cadwallader and Shields, who had been engaged at other points, now cut down the fugitives, and hemmed them in. The Americans with a loss of but a hundred men had killed and wounded 1,500, and taken 1,000 prisoners, with a considerable park of artillery, and to the delight of the whole army, O'Brien recaptured the guns which he had so gallantly lost at Buena Vista.

15. Immediately after the affair at Contreras, Scott rode up and prepared to assault Churubusco, the

When was he able to proceed? When did he reach the valley of Mexico? How had Santa Anna acted? How did Scott advance? What began at San Agustin? Who were sent against Contreras? Who carried the Mexican camp? What did Smith effect? What were Cadwallader and Shields doing? What was the loss on both sides? What delighted the Americans?

key to the city, where Santa Anna awaited him with 30,000 men, posted in an old church and convent, and a fortification thrown up to cover a bridge over the river. The Americans advanced in three divisions, Worth on the right to attack a Mexican advanced post leading to the bridge, Twiggs and Pillow to assault the convent, and Shields by the left to attack the enemy's reserve in the rear. Worth engaged first, and the Mexicans flying before him, were pursued till his van received a volley from the fortification on the river. When this was heard, Twiggs attacked the convent, and Worth forming, assaulted the works before him. After a desperate struggle, in which the Americans were frequently driven back and mowed down by the Mexican volleys, both points were carried. Meanwhile, Shields and Pierce had engaged the Mexican reserve, also intrenched, and charged repeatedly amid a murderous fire, but at the decisive moment, shouts were heard, and Worth, after carrying the works before him, came plunging upon the Mexican flank. The enemy now gave way, and were pursued to the very gates of the capital. Such was the terrible battle of Churubusco, in which Santa Anna lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, at least 10,000 men, and Scott over 1,000 including 79 officers.

16. Scott might now have entered the city, but proposals of peace were made, and the American commander, satisfied with the effect which he had pro-

15. What was Scott's next movement? Describe Santa Anna's position. How did the American's advance? What did Worth do? What was the result of his and Twiggs' attacks? Describe the attack of Shields? What was the American loss? The Mexican?

16. What were now made? What became apparent? How did Scott

duced, agreed to an armistice. It was soon evident, however, that Santa Anna was insincere, and had asked a truce merely to gain time. He had again rallied his forces, and was prepared to resist to the last. Scott finding himself deceived, and deprived in a measure of the fruit of his victory at Churubusco, resolved to attack the city. The point to be attacked in order to gain the city, was the fortress of Chapultepec, and the defences at its base. The latter consisted of a stone work, called the Molino del Rey, and an arsenal; both were filled with troops, and the interval between them was occupied by a field battery, and a large force of infantry. Here Santa Anna, with Generals Valdarez and Leon awaited the Americans. Worth was ordered to carry these works. By starlight, early on the morning of the 8th of September, his corps advanced. On the right, a storming party, under Wright, attacked the Molino, but were driven back with terrible loss by the volleys of the Mexicans. Smith and Cadwallader, however, hastened up, and Garland burst on their flank, and these commanders at last drove the enemy from their position. On the left, McIntosh, with his brigade, assailed the arsenal, but he was soon wounded, his next in command killed, and his force driven back by the enemy's fire. As they fell back, Alvarez with his cavalry dashed upon them, but Sumner's dragoons and Duncan's battery soon drove them off the field. Duncan then opened on the arsenal, and at last dislodged the enemy from that

act? What was the next point of attack? Describe these works. Who was posted here? Who was ordered to attack these works? Describe the assault on the right. Describe that on the left? What was Worth's loss? What did Santa Anna do after the battle?

position, which our troops immediately occupied. Worth had thus accomplished his task, but he had lost 800 men, 58 of them officers. He forthwith destroyed the works and resumed his original position. Santa Anna, who had lost two of his best generals and over 2,000 men, fell back, and gathered his chief force on the southern front of the city.

17. There now remained only Chapultepec itself, with its fortress and military academy, to be taken before storming the town. Twiggs was at once detached to make a feigned attack on the south, and two columns, under Quitman and Pillow, moved forward by different roads to attack Chapultepec, on the morning of the 13th, after a heavy cannonade had driven the Mexicans from their guns. A Mexican detachment at the foot of the hill was driven in, and a redoubt on the slope taken. The Americans then charged up the hill, and though Pillow fell severely wounded, planted their ladders, battered in the gates, and entered the place. A desperate fight ensued; the Mexicans were cut down on all sides, till seeing no hope left, they begged for quarter. Scott was soon at the spot, and ordered Worth to attack the San Cosme gate, and Quitman that of Belén. The causeways leading to these were protected by barricades, well manned and commanded, but both the American generals carried them and reached the gates, and Quitman actually entered the city. Santa Anna, driven to despair, threw forces into the adjoining houses, and

17. What fortress now remained? What was Twiggs ordered to do? Who moved forward to attack Chapultepec? What was done before reaching the height? Describe the charge and capture. What was Scott's next order? Describe the attacks of Worth and Qu'zman. What

for a time checked the American advance ; but Worth breaking his way from house to house, soon carried San Cosmè, and thus by night both had effected lodgements in the city. The same night Santa Anna, with the remnant of his force fled from Mexico, and a deputation came to propose a capitulation. This Scott refused ; he had captured the city, and on the 14th of September, after routing some convicts who had begun to fire upon him, entered it with his gallant and victorious army, which in these last decisive engagements had again lost upwards of 1,500 men. Scott now proclaimed martial law, and established a firm discipline to prevent any such outrages as had elsewhere occurred. Peace seemed now certain, but from some jealousy, the commander was subsequently recalled, and leaving the army, returned to New York in the spring.

18. The fall of Mexico put a stop to hostilities in that quarter, but Santa Anna soon marched with a remnant of his force to aid the troops who were besieging Puebla, where Colonel Childs held out with a small American force, and refused steadily to surrender. Failing to take the place, and hearing of the approach of an American detachment under Lane, Santa Anna marched off to intercept it, but was again on the 9th of October, defeated at Huamantla, losing 150 men to Lane's 34.Flushed with this victory, Lane dashed on to Atlixco to encounter Rea, who, with

was done during the night? Why did Scott refuse a capitulation? When did he enter the city? What did he do there? What led to his recall?

18. Where did Santa Anna next appear? Who commanded there? Where did Santa Anna attempt? Describe the battle of Huamantla?

his guerillas, had cut off a hundred men of Major Lally's command. He was again victorious; met the enemy on the 16th, and with the loss of a single man, he compelled Rea to fly, leaving 219 dead, and 300 wounded. Santa Anna, now a fugitive, resigned all his offices, and the government devolved on Peña, who at once called a convention to treat of peace. It met in November, at Queretaro, and acceding to Peña's wishes, appointed commissioners. Trist, acting on the part of the United States, soon brought negotiations to a close, and on the 2d of February, 1848, the commissioners of the two nations signed the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. This treaty, subsequently ratified by the two governments, gave to the United States the disputed territory, with New Mexico and Upper California, and by its terms the American government was to pay Mexico fifteen millions of dollars. The war being thus ended the American army retired from Mexico in the summer of 1848. Such was the close of this precipitate war, which covered our arms with glory, but cost the lives of 50,000 of our citizens, and was carried on only at a cost of over two hundred millions of dollars.

19. While our armies were thus carrying desolation through Mexico, the afflicted state of famishing Ireland attracted general sympathy; considerable amounts were collected in various parts and sent to the relief of the famishing poor, and a vessel of the

What did Lane then do? Describe the affair at Atlixco? What did Santa Anna now do? Who succeeded him, and how did he act? What was the result of the negotiations?

19. What benevolence was shown in 1847? What state was admitted

United States navy in one instance, carried over a cargo of provisions. At home the war had not checked prosperity; Wisconsin was admitted as a State, and Oregon organized as a territory in 1848, and Minnesota also as a territory early in 1849. Such would have been the course with the newly-acquired territory, had not accident changed the whole face of affairs. Early in 1848, gold was discovered in great quantities on Captain Suter's lands on the Sacramento River, in Upper California. When this became known, a tide of emigration, entirely unparalleled, poured in from all parts of the United States so rapidly, and constantly, that it became necessary to authorize the people to organize a State government at once.

At the election in 1848, Lewis Cass and Martin Van Buren were both put forward as candidates by the democratic party, but General Taylor was elected as President, with Millard Fillmore as Vice-President.

and territories organized? What happened in California in 1848? What resulted from this? Who was elected President in 1848?





CHAPTER XV.

AYLOR'S, FILLMORE'S, AND PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

ZACHARY TAYLOR, 1849-1850.

1. General Taylor assumed the Presidency in March, 1849, and organized his cabinet, now increased by the creation of a department of the Interior, to which he appointed Thomas Ewing, of Ohio. His attention was first engaged by the new territory to which emigrants were flocking. These were under military governors, but in his instructions to those officers, he advised that the people should assemble in convention, and draw up State constitutions and petitions for admission, in order to submit both to Congress. This was the more necessary in New Mexico, inasmuch as Texas, relying on Polk's ratification of its claim, was attempting to enforce its authority at Sante Fé, in spite of the Federal Government.

2. The interior of American California had been visited in the year 1540 by part of Coronado's expedition. The coast was explored by a fleet under Vizcaino some years later. Settlements were attempt-

1. What new department was created? What first occupied Taylor's attention? What did he advise? Why was this necessary?
2. By whom was Upper California first visited? Who undertook to

ed, but none made in the ensuing century. It was not indeed till 1769 that Galvez undertook to colonize the country, and set out with a considerable force, with live stock and other necessaries. To gain the natives, a party of Franciscans, who had succeeded the Jesuits in Lower California, accompanied him under Father Juniper Serra. The expedition went by sea and land, and founded forts and missions at Monterey, San Diego and St. Brnaventure. Others soon rose in various parts near the coast, and San Francisco was established in June, 1776. These missions were sometimes attacked and missionaries killed, but they soon gained the confidence of the natives, who joined them in numbers, and were civilized and converted. In their greatest extent, these missions contained 30,000 Indians, who were thus made the friends of the whites and enabled the settlers to increase without fear. A settlement attempted on the Colorado, by de Croix, on a different plan, was cut off by the Indians in 1781.

3. California, however, increased slowly in the number of the white settlers, and the troubles in Spain materially checked it. On the establishment of the Mexican republic, the Governor sent out in 1824, began to seize the mission lands and dispossess the Indians. In a short time all were swept away, and the Indians are now a mere handful. California did not gain in white settlers to make up the loss, and it became a languishing province. England and France both, how-

colonize it, and when? Who accompanied him? Where were posts and missions founded? When was San Francisco founded? What was the greatest extent of these missions? In what part was another settlement begun, and what became of it?

8. What checked its progress? What did the first Mexican governor

ever, began to covet the harbor of San Francisco, and Russia commenced a settlement not far from it. The United States, also, sent an expedition under Fremont, to explore it, and when the Mexican war broke out, a number of Americans had already settled there. These at first declared themselves independent, but on Sloat's arrival recognized the United States. When gold was discovered, emigration poured in, San Francisco became a thriving town, Sacramento and other cities rose as if by magic. In compliance with Taylor's suggestion, Governor Riley advised the calling of a convention; it met at Monterey on the 1st of September, 1849, and adopted a constitution which was transmitted to Congress, with a petition for admission.

4. Meanwhile, the Mormons, driven from Illinois, had, after much suffering, reached the valley of the Great Salt Lake, in the western part of California, in 1847, and begun a settlement, where they were soon joined by some of their number who had served under General Kearney in the war. These also adopted a constitution, and sent to ask admission as a State. The early history of New Mexico has been elsewhere related. San Gabriel, the first Spanish post, was founded by John de Oñate, in 1597. Others soon grew up, missions were established, and by 1626, most of the Indians were converted, but in 1680 a rebellion

do? What has been the result? What countries began to show an interest in California? What induced great emigration? Who called a convention, and where did it meet?

4. Who had settled near Great Salt Lake? How had some served the United States? When did they begin a settlement? What did they do? When was the first settlement made in New Mexico? When did a rebel-

took place, in which almost all the Spaniards were cut off by the Indians. The Spaniards soon reconquered the country, and sent detachments into what is now Kansas Territory; but the new settlements never regained their former consequence, although the missionaries extended their labors. New Mexico, in subsequent years, suffered much from the roving Indians, and on its conquest by the Americans, was in a declining state. In consequence of the pretensions of Texas, Colonel Monroe, the Governor, called a convention in 1850, which adopted a constitution, and New Mexico also solicited admission.

5. On the meeting of Congress, in December, Taylor sent in these petitions and recommended action upon them; but the country was already in a state of intense excitement. Alarmed at attempts to exclude slavery, the Southern members prepared to secede, and called a convention at Nashville, in January, 1850. A compromise was again resorted to, and on Mr. Clay's motion, a committee was appointed, which finally reported bills satisfactory to all. Amid this dangerous strife, John C. Calhoun, the champion of the South, died, and soon after, General Taylor, whose conduct in advising conventions had been severely questioned, was seized with a sudden and dangerous illness, and expired on the 9th of July, 1850. His death was deeply regretted by all moderate men, as his course had been constantly one of great prudence.

lion break out? What did the Spaniards finally do? How did the country suffer? What did Colonel Monroe do?

5. What discussion was now renewed? What did the Southern members prepare to do? What was again resorted to? Who died amid the debate? Who followed him?

MILLARD FILLMORE, 1850-1858.

6. By the death of Taylor the presidency devolved on Millard Fillmore, of New York, who immediately entered on his duties. In September California was admitted as a free State, and Utah and New Mexico made territories, without any limitation as to slavery. An act was also passed to enable slaveholders to recover fugitive slaves.

Combinations for invading Cuba were soon formed, and many officers of the late army in Mexico were implicated. The government endeavored to check all overt acts, but in August, 1851, an armed force set out under Lopez, once a Spanish general, and landed on the coast of Cuba. All attempts at a revolution had been checked, Lopez and his party were defeated; the leaders with some of their men were executed; more were condemned, but finally pardoned.

7. In the year 1852, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster, the two ablest American statesmen, departed this life. Both had borne many high offices, and in all displayed the greatest ability. Both had been candidates for the Presidency, but will be for ever deserving of our veneration for their labors in defence of the Constitution and for the preservation of the Union.

At the close of the year 1852, Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, was chosen President, and William R. King, of Alabama, Vice-President.

6. Who became president? What State was admitted? What new troubles arose? Who led out an expedition? What befell them?

7. Who died in 1852? What claims have they to the national gratitude? What was the result of the election?

d
y
s
o
L
>

l
i
t
t
n
d
e
e

-
s
-
i
-
l

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C008570878

